



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

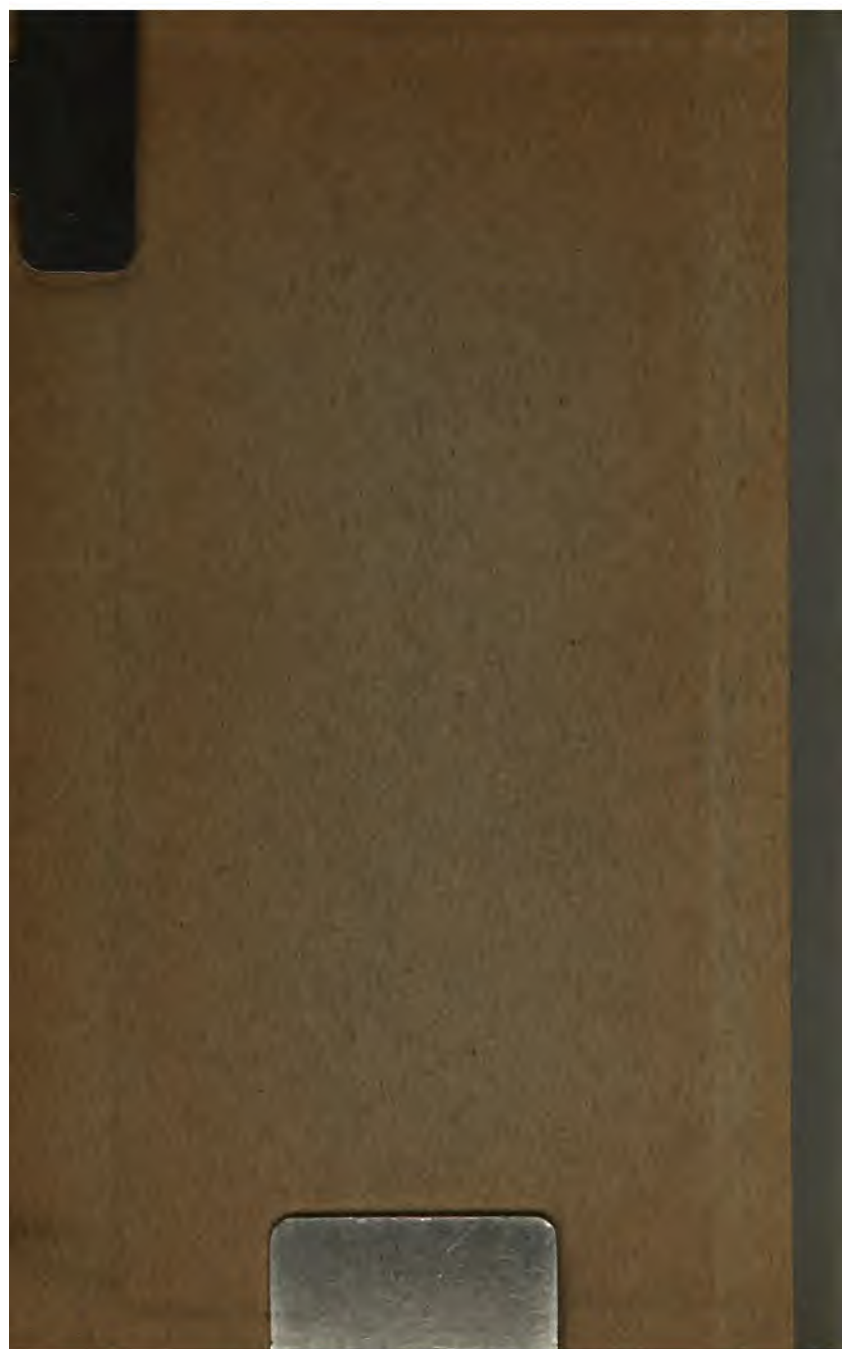
### About Google Book Search

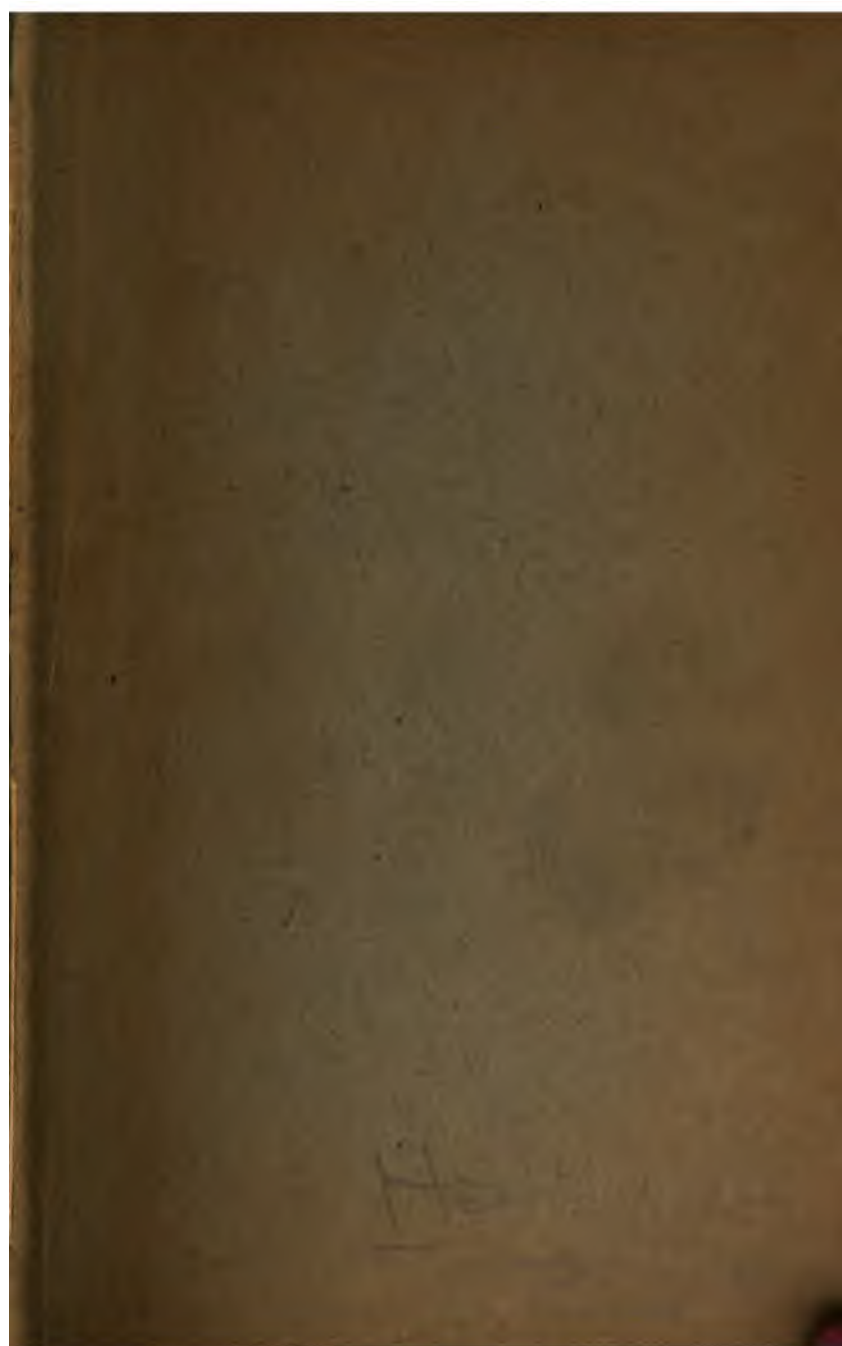
Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

NYPL RESEARCH LIBRARIES



3 3433 07592212 4





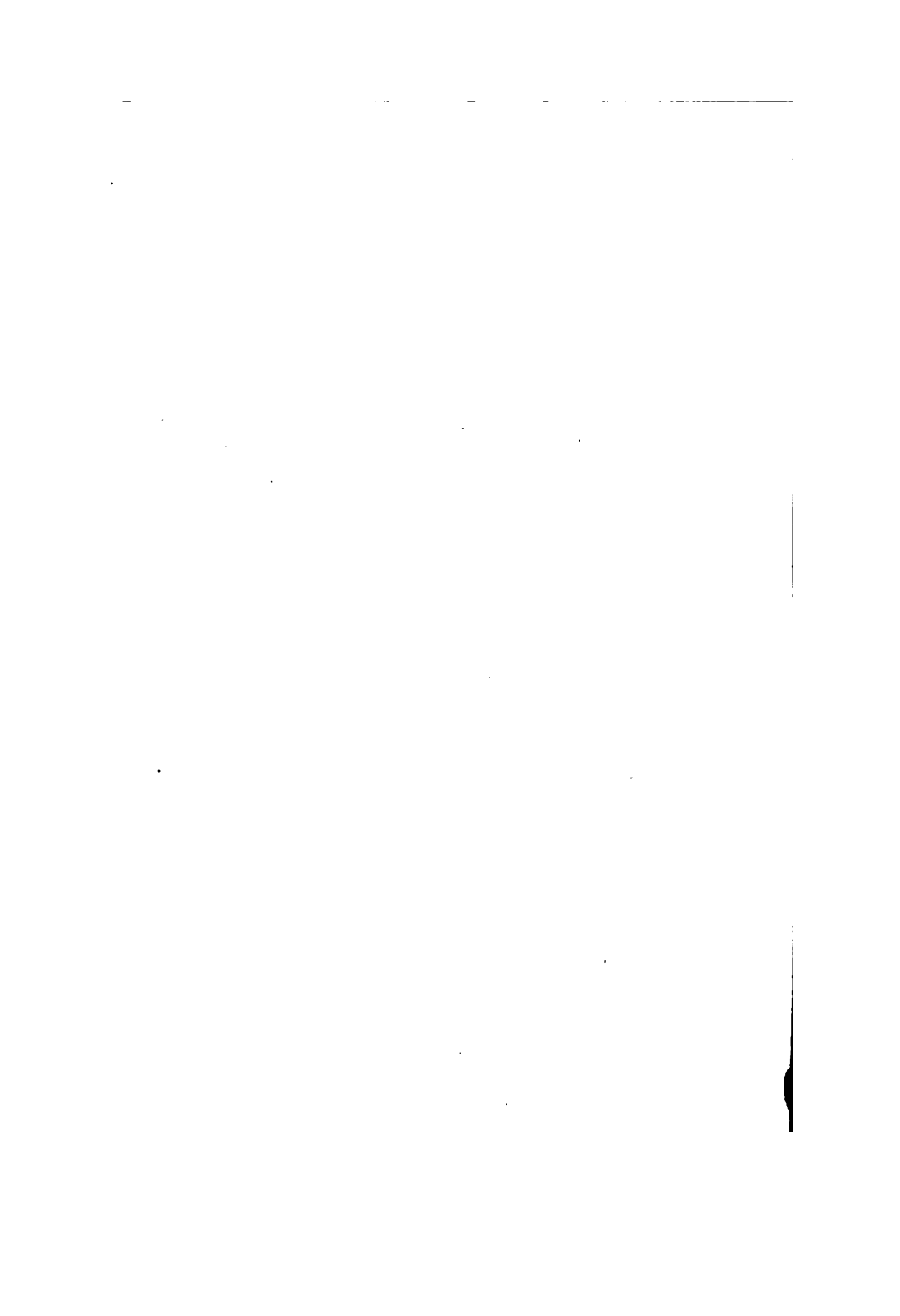
1

2

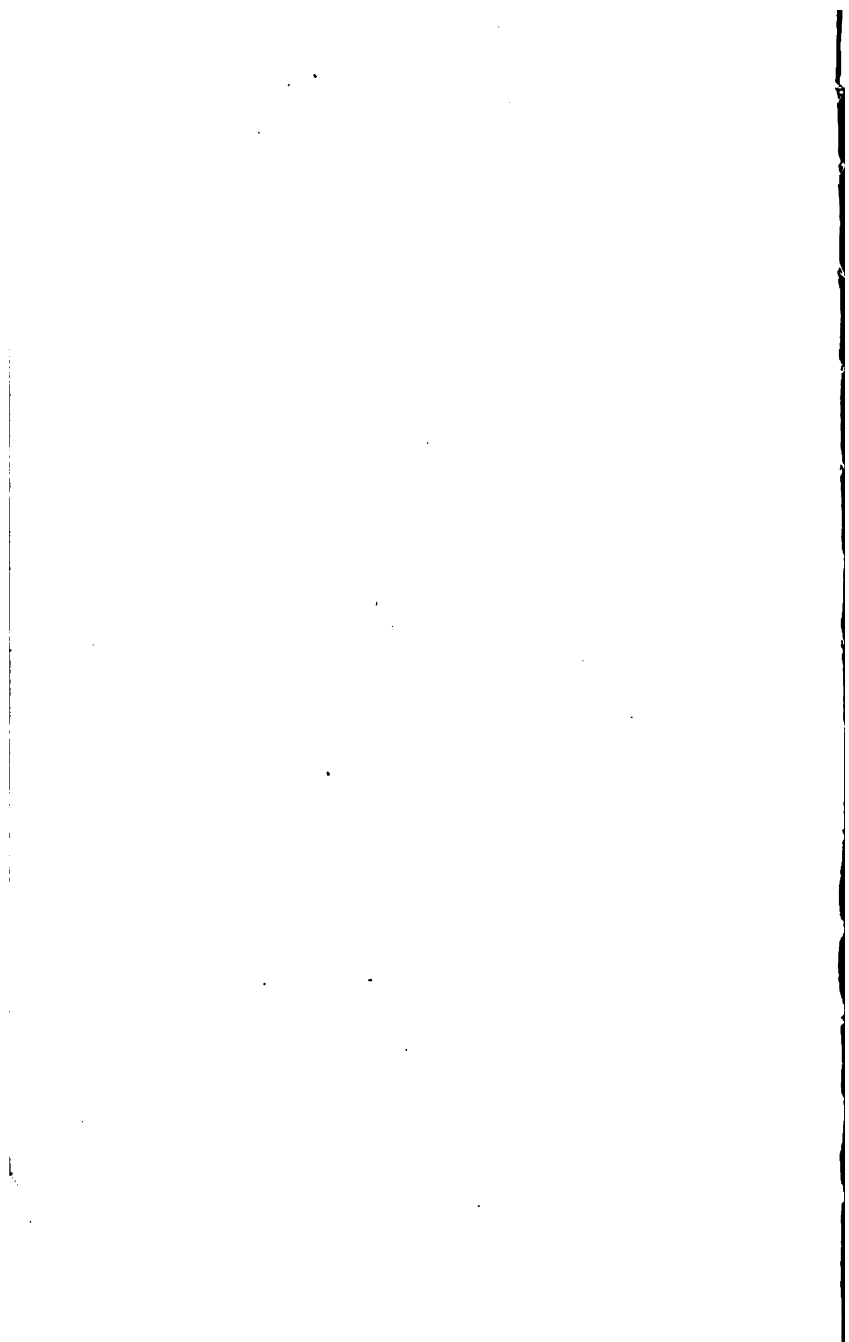


1

2







*The "AUTHORIZED TEXT BOOK" Series.*

---

AN  
INTRODUCTORY  
LATIN BOOK,  
INTENDED AS AN  
ELEMENTARY DRILL-BOOK,  
ON THE  
INFLECTIONS AND PRINCIPLES OF THE LANGUAGE,  
AND AS AN  
INTRODUCTION

TO THE  
AUTHOR'S GRAMMAR, READER, AND LATIN COMPOSITION.

NEW YORK

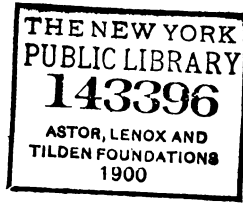
PUBLISHED  
BY

ALBERT HARKNESS,

*Professor in Brown University,*

AUTHOR OF "A LATIN GRAMMAR," "A LATIN READER," "A FIRST GREEK BOOK," ETC.

TORONTO:  
W. C. CHEWETT & CO.,  
17 & 19 KING STREET EAST.  
1868.



Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1886, by  
ALBERT HARKNESS,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Rhode Island.

WROY VLM  
CLERK  
MAILED

## P R E F A C E.

---

THE volume now offered to the public is intended to furnish the pupil his first lessons in Latin. As an Elementary Drill-book, it aims to supply a want long felt in our schools. In no stage of a course of classical study is judicious instruction of more vital importance than in that which deals with the forms and elements of the Latin language. To the beginner, every thing is new, and requires minute and careful illustration. He must at the very outset become so familiar with all the grammatical inflections, with their exact form and force, that he will recognize them with promptness and certainty wherever they occur. He must not lose time in uncertain conjecture, where positive knowledge alone will be of any real value. Improvement on this point is one of the pressing needs of our schools. This volume is intended as a contribution to classical education in aid of this particular work. It aims to lighten the burden of the teacher in elementary drill, and to aid him in grounding his pupils in the first elements of the Latin language.

It is the unmistakable verdict of the class-room, that theory and practice must not be separated in the study of language. The true method of instruction will make ample provision for both. On the one hand, the pupil must, by a vigorous use of the memory, become master of all the grammatical forms and rules; while, on the other hand, he must not be denied the luxury of using the knowledge which he is so laboriously acquiring.

To this just and urgent demand of the class-room, the

author's First Latin Book, published fifteen years since, on the basis of Dr. Arnold's works, owed its origin. For the favor with which it was received, and for the generous interest with which it has so long been regarded, the author desires here to express his sincere thanks to the numerous classical instructors whose fidelity in its use has contributed so largely to its success. In the conviction, however, that it has now done its appointed work, he begs leave to offer them the present volume as its successor.

The great objection to most First Latin Books, that, however excellent they may be in themselves, they are not especially adapted to any particular Grammar, and that they accordingly fill the memory of the pupil with rules and statements which must, as far as possible, be unlearned as soon as he passes to his Grammar, is entirely obviated in this volume. All the grammatical portions of it, even to the numbering of the articles, are introduced in the exact form and language of the author's Grammar. Indeed, the paradigms are not only the same as in the Grammar, but also occupy the same place on the page; so that even the local associations which the beginner so readily forms with the pages of his first book may be transferred directly to the Grammar.

This work is intended to be complete in itself. It comprises a distinct outline of Latin Grammar, Exercises for Double Translation, Suggestions to the Learner, Notes and Vocabularies. As an Introduction to the author's Grammar, Reader and Latin Composition, it discusses and illustrates precisely those points which are deemed most essential as a preparation for the course of study presented in those works.

PROVIDENCE, R.I., June, 1866.

# CONTENTS.

## PART FIRST.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.

	Page.
Alphabet . . . . .	1
Sounds of Letters . . . . .	2
Exercise I. . . . .	3
"    II. . . . .	4
"    III. . . . .	5
Syllables . . . . .	6
Quantity . . . . .	6
Accentuation . . . . .	7
Exercise IV. . . . .	7

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### NOUNS.

Gender . . . . .	8
Person and Number . . . . .	9
Cases . . . . .	9
Declensions . . . . .	10
First Declension . . . . .	11
Exercise V. . . . .	11
Second Declension . . . . .	13
Exercise VI. . . . .	14
"    VII. . . . .	16
Third Declension . . . . .	17
Exercise VIII. . . . .	23
"    IX. . . . .	25
Fourth Declension . . . . .	26
Exercise X. . . . .	27

	Page.
Fifth Declension . . . . .	28
Exercise XI. . . . .	29

## CHAPTER II.

### ADJECTIVES.

First and Second Declensions . . . . .	30
Exercise XII. . . . .	33
Third Declension . . . . .	35
Exercise XIII. . . . .	37
Comparison of Adjectives . . . . .	38
Exercise XIV. . . . .	39
Numeral Adjectives . . . . .	40
Exercise XV. . . . .	42

## CHAPTER III.

### PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns . . . . .	43
Possessive . . . . .	44
Demonstrative . . . . .	44
Relative . . . . .	45
Interrogative . . . . .	46
Indefinite . . . . .	46
Exercise XVI. . . . .	47

## CHAPTER IV.

### VERBS.

Voices . . . . .	48
Moods . . . . .	49
Tenses . . . . .	50
Numbers . . . . .	50
Persons . . . . .	51
Conjugation . . . . .	51
The Verb Sum . . . . .	52
Exercise XVII. . . . .	56
“ XVIII. . . . .	57
“ XIX. . . . .	60
First Conjugation . . . . .	62
Exercise XX. . . . .	66

# CONTENTS.

vii

	Page.
Exercise XXI. . . . .	67
“ XXII. . . . .	69
“ XXIII. . . . .	71
“ XXIV. . . . .	73
“ XXV. . . . .	74
“ XXVI. . . . .	75
“ XXVII. . . . .	76
Second Conjugation . . . . .	78
Exercise XXVIII. . . . .	82
“ XXIX. . . . .	83
“ XXX. . . . .	84
“ XXXI. . . . .	85
“ XXXII. . . . .	86
“ XXXIII. . . . .	87
“ XXXIV. . . . .	88
Third Conjugation . . . . .	90
Exercise XXXV. . . . .	94
“ XXXVI. . . . .	95
“ XXXVII. . . . .	96
“ XXXVIII. . . . .	97
“ XXXIX. . . . .	97
“ XL. . . . .	98
“ XLI. . . . .	99
Fourth Conjugation . . . . .	100
Exercise XLII. . . . .	104
“ XLIII. . . . .	104
“ XLIV. . . . .	105
“ XLV. . . . .	106
“ XLVI. . . . .	107
“ XLVII. . . . .	107
“ XLVIII. . . . .	108
Verbs in 10 . . . . .	110
Exercise XLIX. . . . .	112

## PART THIRD.

### SYNTAX.

#### CHAPTER I.

##### SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

Section.	
I. Classification of Sentences . . . . .	114
II. Simple Sentences . . . . .	115



## CHAPTER II.

## SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

Section.	Page.
I. Agreement of Nouns . . . . .	117
Exercise L. . . . .	117
"    LI. . . . .	119
II. Nominative. . . . .	120
Exercise LII. . . . .	120
III. Vocative . . . . .	121
Exercise LIII. . . . .	121
IV. Accusative . . . . .	122
Exercise LIV. . . . .	123
"    LV. . . . .	124
"    LVI. . . . .	125
V. Dative . . . . .	126
Exercise LVII. . . . .	127
"    LVIII. . . . .	129
VI. Genitive . . . . .	130
Exercise LIX. . . . .	131
"    LX. . . . .	132
VII. Ablative . . . . .	133
Exercise LXI. . . . .	135
"    LXII. . . . .	137
"    LXIII. . . . .	138
"    LXIV. . . . .	140
VIII. Cases with Prepositions . . . . .	141
Exercise LXV. . . . .	142
Suggestions to the Learner . . . . .	143
Latin-English Vocabulary . . . . .	147
English-Latin Vocabulary . . . . .	157

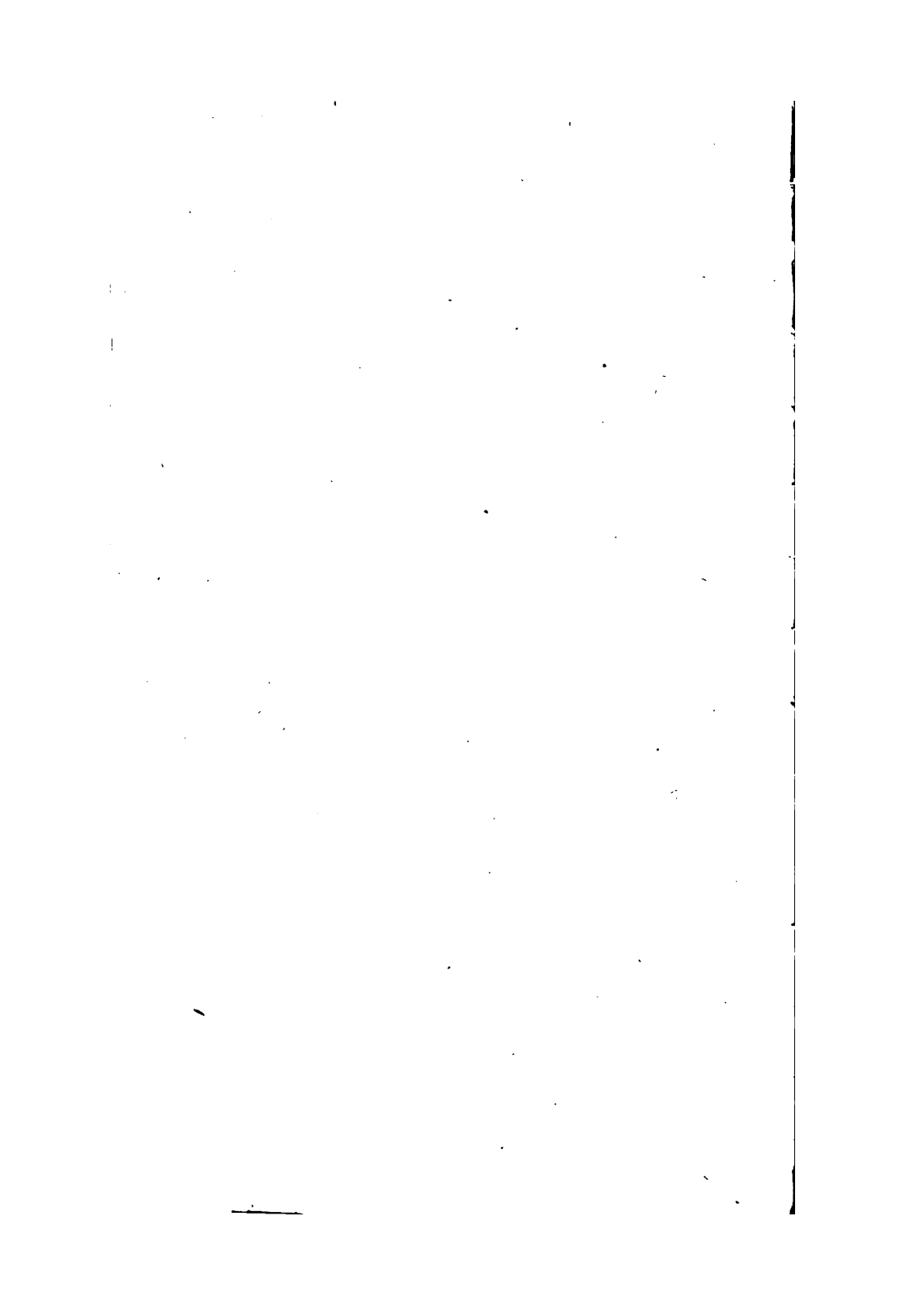
## EXPLANATION OF REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

---

THE numerals refer to articles in this work.

The following abbreviations occur:

abl. . . . .	ablative.	n. . . . .	neuter.
acc. . . . .	accusative.	nom. . . . .	nominative.
act. . . . .	active.	p. . . . .	page.
adv. . . . .	adverb.	part. . . . .	particle.
conj. . . . .	conjunction.	pass. . . . .	passive.
dat. . . . .	dative.	pers. . . . .	person.
f. . . . .	feminine.	plur., or pl. . . . .	plural.
gen. . . . .	genitive.	prep. . . . .	preposition.
indef. . . . .	indefinite.	rel. . . . .	relative.
interrog. . . . .	interrogative.	sing. . . . .	singular.
m. . . . .	masculine.	voc. . . . .	vocative.



# INTRODUCTORY LATIN BOOK.

---

1. **LATIN GRAMMAR** treats of the principles of the Latin language.

---

## PART FIRST.

### ORTHOGRAPHY.<sup>1</sup>

---

#### ALPHABET.

2. **THE** Latin alphabet is the same as the English, with the omission of *w*.

3. **Classes of Letters.**—Letters are divided into two classes:

I. *Vowels* . . . . . a, e, i, o, u, y.

II. *Consonants*:—

1. *Liquids* . . . . . l, m, n, r.

2. *Spirants* . . . . . h, s.

3. *Mutes*: 1) *Labials* . . . . . p, b, f, v.

2) *Palatals* . . . . . c, g, k, q, j.

3) *Linguals* . . . . . t, d.

4. *Double Consonants* . . . . . x, z.

4. **Combinations of Letters.**—We notice here,

1. *Diphthongs*,—combinations of two vowels in one syllable. The most common are *ae*, *oe*, *au*.

2. *Double Consonants*,—*x*=*cs* or *gs*; *z*=*ds* or *ts*.

3. *Ch*, *ph*, *th*, are best treated, not as combinations of letters, but only as aspirated forms of *c*, *p*, and *t*, as *h* is only a breathing.

---

<sup>1</sup> Orthography treats of the letters and sounds of the language.

## SOUNDS OF LETTERS.

5. Scholars in different countries generally pronounce Latin substantially as they do their own languages. In this country, however, two distinct systems are recognized, generally known as the *English* and the *Continental Method*.<sup>1</sup> For the convenience of the instructor, we add a brief outline of each.

## I. ENGLISH METHOD.

## 1. Sounds of Vowels.

6. Vowels generally have their *long* or *short* English sounds.

7. **Long Sound.**—Vowels have their long English sounds—*a* as in *fate*, *e* in *mete*, *i* in *pine*, *o* in *note*, *u* in *tube*, *y* in *type*—in the following situations:

1. In final syllables ending in a vowel:<sup>2</sup> *se*, *si*, *ser'-vi*, *ser'-vo*, *cor'-nu*, *mi'-sy*.

2. In all syllables before a vowel or diphthong: *de'-us*, *de-o'-rum*, *de'-ae*, *di-e'-i*, *ni'-hi-lum*.<sup>3</sup>

3. In penultimate<sup>4</sup> and unaccented syllables, not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*: *pa'-ter*, *pa'-tres*, *A'-thos*, *O'-thrys*, *do-lo'-ris*. But

1) *A unaccented* has the sound of a *final* in America: *men'-sa*.

8. **Short Sound.**—Vowels have the short English sound—*a* as in *fat*, *e* in *met*, *i* in *pin*, *o* in *not*, *u* in *tub*, *y* in *myth*—in the following situations:

<sup>1</sup> Strictly speaking, there is no Continental Method, as every nation on the continent of Europe has its own method.

<sup>2</sup> Some give to *i* in both syllables of *tibi* and *sibi* the short sound.

<sup>3</sup> In these rules, no account is taken of *h*, as that is only a breathing: hence the first *i* in *nihilum* is treated as a vowel before another vowel: for the same reason, *ch*, *ph*, and *th* are treated as single mutes; thus *th* in *Athos* and *Othrys*.

<sup>4</sup> Penultimate, the last syllable but one.

1. In final syllables ending in a consonant: *a'-mat*, *a'-met*, *rex'-it*, *sol*, *con'-sul*, *Te'-thys*; except *post*, *es final*, and *os final* in plural cases: *res*, *dī'-es*, *hos*, *a'-gros*.

2. In all syllables before *x*, or any two consonants except a mute with *l* or *r* (7, 3): *rex'-it*, *bel'-lum*, *rex'-e'-runt*, *bel'-lo'-rum*.

3. In all accented syllables before one or more consonants, except the penultimate: *dom'-i-nus*, *pat'-ri-bus*. But

1) *A*, *e*, or *o*, before a single consonant (or a mute with *l* or *r*) followed by *e*, *i*, or *y*, before another vowel, has the long sound: *a'-ci-es*, *a'-cri-a*, *me'-re-o*, *do'-ce-o*.

2) *U*, in any syllable not final, before a single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, except *bl*, has the long sound: *Pu'-ni-cus*, *sa-lu'-bri-tas*.

## 2. Sounds of Diphthongs.

9. *Ae* and *oe* are pronounced like *e*:

1) long: *Cae'-sar* (*Ce'-sar*), *Oe'-ta* (*E'-ta*).

2) short: *Daed'-ā-lus* (*Ded'-a-lus*), *Oed'-i-pus*.

*Au* as in author: *au'-rum*.

*Eu* . . . neuter: *neu'-ter*.<sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE I.

Give the sounds of the Vowels and Diphthongs in the following words.

1. Men'-sam,<sup>2</sup> men'-sas, men'-sis, men'-sae,<sup>3</sup> men'-sa'-rum.<sup>4</sup>
2. Ho'-ram,<sup>5</sup> ho'-ras, ho'-ris, ho'-rae,<sup>6</sup> ho'-ra'-rum.<sup>7</sup>
3. Scho'-la,<sup>8</sup> scho'-lam, scho'-las, scho'-lis, scho'-lae, scho'-la'-rum.
4. Co-ro'-na,<sup>8</sup> co-ro'-nam, co-ro'-nas, co-ro'-nis, co-ro'-nae.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Ei* and *oi* are seldom diphthongs; but, when so used, they have the long sound of *i*: *hei*, *cui*.

<sup>2</sup> 8, 2; 8, 1.

<sup>5</sup> 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>8</sup> 7, 3; 7, 3, 1).

<sup>3</sup> 8, 2; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>6</sup> 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>7</sup> 7, 3; 9; 7, 1.

<sup>4</sup> 8, 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>1</sup> 7, 3; 8, 1.

3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

10. The consonants are pronounced in general as in English; but a few directions may aid the learner.

11. **C, G, S, T, and X** are generally pronounced with their ordinary English sounds. Thus,

1. *C* and *g* are soft (like *s* and *j*) before *e, i, y, ae,* and *oe*; and hard in other situations: *ce'-do* (sedo), *ci'-vis*, *Cy'-rus*, *cae'-do*, *coe'-na*, *a'-ge* (a-je), *a'-gi*; *ca'-do* (ka'do), *co'-go*, *cum*, *Ga'-des*.

2. *S* generally has its regular English sound as in son, thus: *sa'-cer*, *so'-ror*, *si'-dus*. But

1) *S* final after *e, ae, au, b, m, n, r,* is pronounced like *z*: *spes*, *praes*, *laus*, *urbs*, *hi'-ems*, *mons*, *pars*.

3. *T* has its regular English sound as in time: *ti'-mor*, *to'-tus*.

4. *X* has generally its regular English sound like *ks*: *rex'-i* (rek'-si), *ux'-or* (uk'-sor).

12. **C, S, T, and X — Aspirated.** — Before *i*, preceded by an accented syllable and followed by a vowel, *c, s, t,* and *x* are aspirated, — *c, s,* and *t* taking the sound of *sh*, *x* that of *ksh*: *so'-ci-us* (so'-she-us), *Al'-si-um* (Al'-she-um), *ar'-ti-um* (ar'-she-um); *anx'-i-us* (ank'-she-us). *C* has also the sound of *sh* before *eu* and *yo*, preceded by an accented syllable: *ca-du'-ce-us* (ca-du'-she-us), *Sic'-yo-n* (Sish'-e-on).

13. **Silent Consonants.** — An initial consonant, with or without the aspirate *h*, is sometimes silent: *Cne'-us* (Ne'-us).

## EXERCISE II.

*Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words.*

1. *Ci'-vis*,<sup>1</sup> *civ'-i-um*, *civ'-i-bus*. 2. *Car'-men*,<sup>2</sup> *car'-mi-nis*, *car'-mi-ne*.<sup>3</sup> 3. *Rex*,<sup>4</sup> *re'-gis*,<sup>5</sup> *re'-gi*, *re'-gum*.<sup>5</sup> 4. *Ca'-put*,<sup>6</sup> *cap'-i-tis*, *cap'-i-tum*. 5. *A'-ci-em*,<sup>7</sup> *a'-ci-e*, *a'-ci-es*.<sup>8</sup> 6. *Ars*,<sup>8</sup> *ar'-tis*, *ar'-tes*,<sup>8</sup> *ar'-ti-um*.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> 11, 1 and 2; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>2</sup> 11, 1; 8, 2; 8, 1.

<sup>3</sup> 8, 3; 7, 3; 7, 1.

<sup>4</sup> 11, 4.

<sup>5</sup> 11, 1; 7, 3; 8, 1.

<sup>6</sup> 11, 1, and 3.

<sup>7</sup> 8, 3, 1; 12; 8, 1.

<sup>8</sup> 11, 2, 1).

<sup>9</sup> 12.

## II. CONTINENTAL METHOD.<sup>1</sup>

### 1. *Sounds of Vowels.*

14. Each vowel has in the main one uniform sound;<sup>2</sup> but the length or duration of the sound depends upon the quantity of the vowel. See 20.

The vowel-sounds are as follows :

<i>a</i>	like	<i>ä</i>	in	father :	e.g.,	<i>a'-ra.</i>
<i>e</i>	"	<i>ä</i>	made :	"	<i>plé-bes.</i>	
<i>i</i>	"	<i>ē</i>	me :	"	<i>i'-ri.</i>	
<i>o</i>	"	<i>ō</i>	no :	"	<i>o'-ro.</i>	
<i>u</i>	"	<i>ô</i>	do :	"	<i>u'-num.</i>	
<i>y</i>	"	<i>ē</i>	me ;	"	<i>Ny'-sa.</i>	

### 2. *Sounds of Diphthongs.*

15. *ae* and *oe* like *a* in made : e.g., *ae'-tas*, *coé'-lum.*  
*au* " *ou* " out : " *au'-rum.*<sup>3</sup>

### 3. *Sounds of Consonants.*

16. The pronunciation of the consonants is similar to that of the English method ; but it varies somewhat in different countries.

## EXERCISE III.

*Give the sounds of the Letters in the following words, according to the Continental Method.*

1. *Hō'-rā*, *hō'-rām*, *hō'-rās*, *hō'-rīs*, *hō'-rae*, *hō-rā'-rūm.*
2. *Glō'-rī-ā*, *glō'-rī-ām*, *glō'-rī-ae.*
3. *Dō'-nūm*, *dō'-nī*, *dō'-*

<sup>1</sup> If the *English Method* is adopted as the standard in the school, this outline of the *Continental Method* should be omitted.

<sup>2</sup> These sounds sometimes undergo slight modifications in uniting with the various consonants.

<sup>3</sup> In other combinations, the two vowels are generally pronounced separately ; but *ei* and *eu* occur as diphthongs, with nearly the same sound as in English.



nō, dō'-nā, dō-nō'-rūm, dō'-nis. 4. Cī'-vīs, cī'-vī, cī'-vēm,  
cī'-vēs, cīv'-ī-ūm, cīv'-ī-būs.

### SYLLABLES.

17. In the pronunciation of Latin, every word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs; thus the Latin words *more*, *vice*, *acute*, and *persuade* are pronounced, not as the same words are in English, but with their vowel-sounds all heard in separate syllables; thus: *mō'-re*, *vī'-ce*, *a-cu'-te*, *per-sua'-de*.

### QUANTITY.

20. Syllables are, in quantity or length, either long, short, or common.<sup>1</sup>

21. **Long.**—A syllable is long in quantity,

1. If it contains a diphthong: *haec*.

2. If its vowel is followed by *j*, *x*, *z*, or any two consonants, except a mute with *l* or *r*: *rex*, *mons*.

22. **Short.**—A syllable is short if its vowel is followed by another vowel or a diphthong: *dī'-es*, *vī'-ae*, *nī'-hil*.<sup>2</sup>

23. **Common.**—A syllable is common, if its vowel, naturally<sup>3</sup> short, is followed by a mute with *l* or *r*: *ā'-gri*.

24. The signs  $\bar{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\acute{\phantom{a}}$ ,  $\circ$ , denote respectively that the syllables over which they are placed are long, short, or common: *ā-grō-rūm*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Common; i.e., sometimes long, and sometimes short.

<sup>2</sup> No account is taken of the breathing *h*. See 7, 2, note 3.

<sup>3</sup> A vowel is said to be *naturally* short when it is short in its own nature; i.e., in itself, without reference to its position.

<sup>4</sup> By referring to 14, it will be seen, that, in the Continental Method, *quantity* and *sound* coincide with each other: a vowel long in quantity is long in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is short in sound. But, by referring to 7 and 8, it will be seen, that, in the English Method, the quantity of a vowel does not at all affect its sound, except in determining the accent (26). Hence, in this method, a vowel long in quantity is often short in sound, and a vowel short in quantity is often long in sound. Thus, in *rēx*, *ūrbs*, *ars*, *sōl*, the vowels are all long in quantity;

# ACCENTUATION.

## I. PRIMARY ACCENT.

25. Monosyllables are treated as accented syllables:  
*mons, nos.*

26. Other words are accented as follows:<sup>1</sup>

1. *Words of two syllables*—always on the first: *men'-sa.*
2. *Words of more than two syllables*—on the *penult*<sup>2</sup> if that is long in quantity, otherwise on the *antepenult*:<sup>3</sup>  
*ho-nō'-ris, con'-sū-lis.*

## II. SECONDARY ACCENTS.

27. A second accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the primary accent,—on the second, if that is the first syllable of the word, or is long in quantity; otherwise on the third:  
*mon'-u-e'-runt, mon'-u-e-ra'-mus, in-stau'-ra-ve'-runt.*

28. In the same way, a third accent is placed on the second or third syllable before the second accent: *hon'-o-ris'-i-cen-tis'-sī-mus.*

## EXERCISE IV.

*Accent and pronounce the following Words.*

1. Cōrōnā,<sup>3</sup> cōrōnae, cōrōnārūm.<sup>4</sup>
2. Gemmae,<sup>5</sup> gemmā, gemmārūm.
3. Sāpientiae,<sup>6</sup> āmicītia, iustītia, glōriae.<sup>7</sup>

but by 8, 1, they all have the short English sounds: while in *āvē, mūrē*, the vowels are all short in quantity; but by 7, 1, and 3, they all have the long English sounds. Hence, in pronouncing according to the English Method, determine the place of the accent by the quantity (according to 26), and then determine the sounds of the letters irrespective of quantity (according to 7-12).

<sup>1</sup> In the subsequent pages, the pupil will be expected to accent words in pronunciation according to these rules. The quantity of the penult in words of more than two syllables will therefore be marked (unless determined by 21 and 22), to enable him to ascertain the place of the accent.

<sup>2</sup> Penult, last syllable but one; antepenult, the last but two.

<sup>3</sup> 26, 2; 7, 3, 1).

<sup>5</sup> 11, 1; 26, 1.

<sup>7</sup> 11, 1; 8, 3, 1).

<sup>4</sup> 26, 2; 27.

<sup>6</sup> 27; 8, 3, 1); 12.

4. Săpientiā, amicitiā, justitiā, glōriā. 5. Săpientiā, amicitiā, justitiā, glōriā.

## PART SECOND.

### ETYMOLOGY.

29. ETYMOLOGY treats of the classification, inflection, and derivation of words.

30. The Parts of Speech<sup>1</sup> are — *Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, and Interjections.*

## CHAPTER I.

### NOUNS.

31. A Noun, or Substantive, is a name, as of a person, place, or thing: *Cicēro*, Cicero; *Rōma*, Rome; *puer*, boy; *dōmus*, house.

1. A **Proper Noun** is a proper name, as of a person or place: *Cicēro*, *Rōma*.

2. A **Common Noun** is a name common to all the members of a class of objects: *vir*, man; *ēquus*, horse.

32. Nouns have *Gender, Number, Person, and Case.*

### GENDER.

33. There are three genders,<sup>2</sup> — *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

<sup>1</sup> Thus in Latin, as in English, words are divided, according to their use, into eight classes, called *Parts of Speech*.

<sup>2</sup> In English, *Gender* denotes *sex*. Accordingly, masculine nouns denote *males*; feminine nouns, *females*; and neuter nouns, objects which are *neither male nor female*. In Latin, however, this natural distinction

34. In some nouns, gender is determined by signification; in others, by endings.

35. GENERAL RULES FOR GENDER.

I. MASCULINES.

1. Names of *Males*: *Cicero*; *vir*, man; *rex*, king.

2. Names of *Rivers*, *Winds*, and *Months*: *Rhēnus*, Rhine; *Nōtus*, south wind; *Aprilis*, April.

II. FEMININE.

1. Names of *Females*: *mulier*, woman; *leaena*, lioness.

2. Names of *Countries*, *Towns*, *Islands*, and *Trees*: *Aegyptus*, Egypt; *Rōma*, Rome; *Dēlos*, Delos; *pirus*, pear-tree.

PERSON AND NUMBER.

37. The Latin, like the English, has three persons and two numbers. The first person denotes the speaker; the second, the person spoken to; the third, the person spoken of. The singular number denotes one, the plural more than one.

CASES.

38. The Latin has six cases:<sup>1</sup>

Names.	English Equivalents.
Nominative,	Nominative.
Genitive,	Possessive, or Objective with <i>of</i> .
Dative,	Objective with <i>to</i> or <i>for</i> .
Accusative,	Objective.
Vocative,	Nominative Independent.
Ablative,	Objective with <i>from</i> , <i>by</i> , <i>in</i> , <i>with</i> .

of gender is applied only to the names of *males* and *females*; while, in all other nouns, gender depends upon an artificial distinction, according to grammatical rules.

<sup>1</sup> The case of a noun shows the relation which that noun sustains to other words; as, *John's book*. Here the *possessive case* (*John's*) shows that John sustains to the book the relation of *possessor*.

1. **Oblique Cases.** — In distinction from the Nominative and Vocative (*casus recti*, right cases), the other cases are called *oblique* (*casus obliqui*).

2. **Case-Endings.** — In form, the several cases are, in general, distinguished from each other by certain terminations called *case-endings*: Nom. *mensa*, Gen. *mensae*, &c.

3. **Cases alike.** — But certain cases are not distinguished in form. Thus,

1) The *Nominative*, *Accusative*, and *Vocative*, in *neut̄ers*, are alike, and in the plural end in *a*.

2) The *Nominative* and *Vocative* are alike in all nouns, except those in *us* of the second declension (45).

3) The *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* are alike.

### DECLENSIONS.

39. The formation of the several cases is called Declension.

40. **Five Declensions.** — In Latin, there are five declensions, distinguished from each other by the following

#### *Genitive Endings.*

Dec. I.	Dec. II.	Dec. III.	Dec. IV.	Dec. V.
ae,	ī,	is,	ūs,	eī. <sup>1</sup>

41. **Stem and Endings.** — In any noun, of whatever declension,

1. The stem<sup>2</sup> may be found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

2. The several cases may be formed by adding to this stem the case-endings.

<sup>1</sup> See 119, 1.

<sup>2</sup> The *stem* is the basis of the word, or the part to which the several endings are added to form the various cases. Thus in the forms, *mensā*, *mensae*, *mensām*, *mensis*, &c., given under 42, it will be observed that *mens* remains unchanged; and that, by the addition of the endings, *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., to it, the several cases are formed. Here *mens* is the *stem*; and *a*, *ae*, *am*, *is*, &c., are the *case-endings*.

FIRST DECLENSION.

42. Nouns of the first declension end in

ă and ă, — *feminine*; ăs and ăs, — *masculine*.<sup>1</sup>

But pure Latin nouns end only in ă, and are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.

Nom. mensă,	a table,	ă
Gen. mensăc,	of a table,	ac
Dat. mensăe,	to, for, a table,	ae
Acc. mensăm,	a table,	ăm
Voc. mensă,	O table,	ă
Abl. mensă,	with, from, by, a table,	ă

PLURAL.

Nom. mensăe,	tables,	ae
Gen. mensărum,	of tables,	ărūm
Dat. mensăis,	to, for, tables,	is
Acc. mensăs,	tables,	ăs
Voc. mensăe,	O tables,	ae
Abl. mensăis,	with, from, by, tables,	is.

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of this example, it will be seen that the several cases are distinguished from each other by the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.** — With these endings decline:

*Ala*, wing; *ăqua*, water; *causa*, cause; *fortuna*, fortune; *porta*, gate; *victoria*, victory.

EXERCISE V.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Amicitia,	ae, <sup>2</sup> f. <sup>3</sup>	friendship.
Corona,	ae, f.	crown.

<sup>1</sup> That is, nouns of this declension in ă and e are feminine, and those in as and es are masculine.

<sup>2</sup> The ending ae is the case-ending of the Genitive: *amicitia*; Gen., *amicitiae*.

<sup>3</sup> Gender is indicated in the vocabularies by m. for masculine, f. for feminine, and n. for neuter.

Gemmă	ae, f.	gem.
Glōriă	ae, f.	glory.
Hōră	ae, f.	hour.
Justitiă	ae, f.	justice.
Săpientiă	ae, f.	wisdom.
Schölă	ae, f.	school.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Corōnă,<sup>1</sup> corōnă, corōnae,<sup>2</sup> corōnam, coronārum, corōnis, corōnas. 2. Gemmă, gemmă, gemmae, gemmam, gemmārum, gemmis, gemmas. 3. Săpientiă, amicitia, justitiă, gloriă. 4. Săpientiam, amicitiam, justitiam, gloriam. 5. Săpientiă, amicitia, justitiă, gloriă. 6. Scholārum, hōrārum. 7. Scholis, horis. 8. Scholas, horas.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Friendship, friendships. 2. Of<sup>3</sup> friendship, of friendships. 3. To friendship, to friendships. 4. By friendship, by friendships. 5. Justice, by justice, of justice, to justice. 6. Wisdom, glory. 7. With wisdom, with glory. 8. To wisdom, to glory. 9. Of wisdom, of glory. 10. Of a<sup>4</sup> crown, of a gem. 11. Crowns, gems. 12. With the<sup>4</sup> crowns, with the gems. 13. Of crowns, of gems.

<sup>1</sup> As the Latin has no article, a noun may, according to the connection in which it is used, be translated (1) without the article; as, *corōna*, crown; (2) with the indefinite article *a* or *an*; as, *corōna*, a crown; (3) with the definite article *the*; as, *corōna*, the crown.

<sup>2</sup> When the same Latin form may be found in two or more cases, the pupil is expected to give the meaning for each case. Thus *corōnae* may be in the Genitive or Dative Singular, or in the Nominative or Vocative Plural.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil will observe that the English prepositions, *of*, *to*, *by*, may be rendered into Latin by simply changing the ending of the word. Thus *friendship*, *amicitia*; *of friendship*, *amicitiae*.

<sup>4</sup> The pupil will remember that the English articles, *a*, *an*, and *the*, are not to be rendered into Latin at all. *Crown*, *a crown*, and *the crown*, are all rendered into Latin by the same word.

SECOND DECLENSION.

45. Nouns of the second declension end in

**ēr, ir, ūs, os, — masculine ; ūm, on, — neuter.**

But pure Latin nouns end only in *er, ir, us, um*, and are declined as follows :

*Servus, slave. Puer, boy. Ager, field. Templum, temple.*

SINGULAR.

<i>N. servūs</i>	<i>puēr</i>	<i>āgēr</i>	<i>templūm</i>
<i>G. servi</i>	<i>puēri</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templī</i>
<i>D. servō</i>	<i>puērō</i>	<i>āgrō</i>	<i>templō</i>
<i>A. servūm</i>	<i>puērūm</i>	<i>āgrūm</i>	<i>templūm</i>
<i>V. servē</i>	<i>puēr</i>	<i>āgēr</i>	<i>templūm</i>
<i>A. servō</i>	<i>puērō</i>	<i>āgrō</i>	<i>templō</i>

PLURAL.

<i>N. servi</i>	<i>puēri</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templā</i>
<i>G. servōrūm</i>	<i>puērōrūm</i>	<i>āgrōrūm</i>	<i>templōrūm</i>
<i>D. servis</i>	<i>puēris</i>	<i>āgris</i>	<i>templis</i>
<i>A. servōs</i>	<i>puērōs</i>	<i>āgrōs</i>	<i>templā</i>
<i>V. servi</i>	<i>puēri</i>	<i>āgrī</i>	<i>templā</i>
<i>A. servis.</i>	<i>puēris.</i>	<i>āgris.</i>	<i>templis.</i>

1. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen that they are declined with the following

*Case-endings.*

1. ūs.                      2. ēr.                      3. ūm.

SINGULAR.

<i>N. ūs</i>	— <sup>1</sup>	<i>ūm</i>
<i>G. ī</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>ī</i>
<i>D. ō</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>
<i>A. ūm</i>	<i>ūm</i>	<i>ūm</i>
<i>V. ē</i>	— <sup>1</sup>	<i>ūm</i>
<i>A. ō</i>	<i>ō</i>	<i>ō</i>

<sup>1</sup> The endings for the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are wanting in nouns in *er*: thus *puer* is the stem without any case-ending; the full form would be *puērūs*.



PLURAL.		
N. ī	ī	ā
G. ōrūm	ōrūm	ōrūm
D. is	is	is
A. ōs	ōs	ā
V. ī	ī	ā
A. is.	is.	is.

2. **Examples for Practice.** — Like **SERVUS**: *annus*, year; *dominus*, master. — Like **PUER**: *gēner*, son-in-law; *sōcer*, father-in-law. — Like **AGER**: *fāber*, artisan; *magister*, master. — Like **TEMPLUM**: *bellum*, war; *regnum*, kingdom.

3. **Paradigms.** — Observe

1) That *puer* differs in declension from *servus* only in dropping the endings *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc.: Nom. *puer* for *puērus*, Voc. *puer* for *puēre*.

2) That *ager* differs from *puer* only in dropping *e* before *r*.

3) That *templum*, as a neuter noun, has the Nom., Accus., and Voc. alike, ending in the plural in *a*. See 38, 3.

## EXERCISE VI.

### I. Vocabulary.

Dōnūm, i, n.	gift.
Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.	son-in-law.
Lībēr, lībrī, m.	book.
Ocūlūs, ī, m.	eye.
Praeceptūm, ī, n.	rule, precept.
Sōcēr, sōcērī, m.	father-in-law.
Tyrannūs, ī, m.	tyrant.
Verbūm, ī, n.	word.

### II. Translate into English.

1. Ocūlus, ocūli, ocūlo, ocūlum, ocūle, oculōrum, ocūlis, ocūlos. 2. Socer, socērī, socēro, socērūm, socerōrum, socēris, socēros. 3. Servi, tyranni. 4. Puērī, genērī. 5. Agri, libri. 6. Templi, doni. 7. Servo, tyranno. 8. Puērūm, genērūm. 9. Agrōrum, librōrum. 10. Tempia, dona. 11. Servum, servos. 12. Genērī, generōrum. 13. Agri, agrō-

rum. 14. *Dono, donis.* 15. *Verbum, praeceptum.* 16. *Verbi, praecepti.* X

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The slave, the slaves. 2. For the slave, for the slaves.  
3. Of the slave, of the slaves. 4. Of the father-in-law,  
of the son-in-law. 5. Of the fathers-in-law, of the sons-in-  
law. 6. For the fathers-in-law, for the sons-in-law. 7. The  
boy, the field. 8. The boys, the fields. 9. The gift, the  
gifts. 10. With the gift, with the gifts. 11. The tyrant,  
the boy, the book, the precept. 12. Of the tyrant, of the  
boy, of the book, of the precept.

SECOND DECLENSION—CONTINUED.

**RULE II.—Appositives.**

363. An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE:<sup>1</sup>

• *Cluilius rex moritur, Cluilius the king dies.* Liv. *Urbes Carthago atque Numantia, the cities Carthage and Numantia.* Cic.

I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING.

In parsing a Noun, Adjective, or Pronoun,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Decline<sup>2</sup> it.
3. Give its Gender, Number, Case, &c.
4. Give its Syntax,<sup>3</sup> and the Rule for it.

<sup>1</sup> A noun or pronoun used to explain or identify another noun or pronoun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an *appositive*; as, *Cluilius rex*, Cluilius the king. Here *rex*, the king, is the appositive, showing the rank or office of Cluilius,—*Cluilius the king*. The noun or pronoun to which the appositive is added—*Cluilius* in the example—is called the *subject* of the appositive.

<sup>2</sup> Adjectives in the Comparative or in the Superlative degree (160) should also be compared (162).

<sup>3</sup> By the *Syntax* of a word is meant the Grammatical construction of it. Thus we give the Syntax of *regina*, under the Model, by stating that it is in apposition with its subject, *Artemisia*.

## MODEL.

Artēmisiā rēginā, *Artemisia the queen.*

*Regina* is a noun (31) of the First Declension (42), as it has *ae* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *regin* (41). Singular: *regina, reginae, reginae, reginam, reginā, reginā*. Plural: *reginae, reginārum, reginīs, reginas, reginae, reginīs*. It is of the Feminine gender, as the names of females are feminine by 35, II. 1. It is in the Nominative Singular, in apposition with its subject *Artemisia*, with which it agrees in *case*, according to Rule II: "An Appositive agrees with its Subject in CASE."

## EXERCISE VII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Caiūs, ii, m.	<i>Caius</i> , a proper name.
Filiā, ae, f.	<i>daughter</i> .
Hastā, ae, f.	<i>spear</i> .
Pisistrātūs, i, m.	<i>Pisistratus</i> , Tyrant of Athens.
Rāmūs, i, m.	<i>branch</i> .
Rēginā, ae, f.	<i>queen</i> .
Tulliā, ae, f.	<i>Tullia</i> , a proper name.
Victōria, ae, f.	<i>Victoria</i> , Queen of England.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Ramus, hastā. 2. Rami, hastae. 3. Ramo, hastae.  
 4. Ramum, hastam. 5. Ramo, hastā. 6. Ramōrum, hastārum. 7. Ramis, hastis. 8. Ramos, hastas. 9. Tyranni, tyrannōrum. 10. Verbum, verba. 11. Verbo, verbis.  
 12. Templum, templa. 13. Templi, templōrum. 14. Pisistrātus tyrannus.<sup>1</sup> 15. Pisistrāti tyranni. 16. Pisistrato tyranno. 17. Tulliā filiā. 18. Tulliae filiae. 19. Tulliam filiam.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The tyrant, the crown. 2. The tyrants, the crowns.

<sup>1</sup> *Tyrannus* is an appositive, in the Nominative, in agreement with its subject, *Pisistrātus*, according to Rule II. 363.

3. Of the tyrant, of the crown. 4. Of the tyrants, of the crowns. 5. To the tyrant, to the crown. 6. To the tyrants, to the crowns. 7. The book, the books. 8. With the book, with the books. 9. Of Pisistratus, for Pisistratus. 10. Of the queen, for the queen. 11. Caius the slave.<sup>1</sup> 12. Of Caius the slave. 13. For Caius the slave. 14. Victoria the queen. 15. For Victoria the queen. 16. Of Victoria the queen.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

48. Nouns of the third declension end in

a, e, i, o, y, c, l, n, r, s, t, x.

#### I. MASCULINE ENDINGS:<sup>2</sup>

o, or, os, er, es *increasing in the genitive.*

#### II. FEMININE ENDINGS:

as, is, ys, x, es *not increasing in the genitive; s preceded by a consonant.*

#### III. NEUTER ENDINGS:

a, e, i, y, c, l, n, t, ar, ur, us.

49. Nouns of this declension may be divided into two classes:

I. Nouns which have a case-ending in the Nominative Singular. These all end in e, s, or x.

II. Nouns which have no case-ending in the Nominative Singular.

In Class II., the Nom. Sing. is either the same as the stem, or is formed from it by dropping or changing one or more letters of the stem: *consul*, Gen. *consulis*; stem, *consul*: *leo*, *leōnis*; stem, *leon* (Nom. drops n), lion: *carmen*, *carminis*; stem, *carmīn* (Nom. changes in to en), song.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule II. 363.

<sup>2</sup> That is, nouns with these endings are masculine.

## 50. CLASS I.—WITH NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*,<sup>1</sup> and **x**:—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Nubes, <i>f.</i> cloud.	Avis, <i>f.</i> bird.	Urbs, <i>f.</i> city.	Rex, <i>m.</i> king.
----------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------

## SINGULAR.

N. nūbēs	āvīs	urb̄s	rex <sup>2</sup>
G. nubīs	avīs	urbīs	rēgīs
D. nubī	avī	urbī	regī
A. nubēm	avēm	urbēm	regēm
V. nubēs	avīs	urb̄s	rex
A. nubē	avē	urbē	regē

## PLURAL.

N. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
G. nubīum	avīum	urbīum	regūm
D. nubībūs	avībūs	urbībūs	regībūs
A. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
V. nubēs	avēs	urbēs	regēs
A. nubībūs.	avībūs.	urbībūs.	regībūs.

II. Nouns in **es**, **is**, **s** *impure*, and **x**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Miles, <i>m.</i> soldier.	Lapis, <i>m.</i> stone.	Ars, <i>f.</i> art.	Judex, <i>m.</i> and <i>f.</i> judge.
------------------------------	----------------------------	------------------------	--

## SINGULAR.

N. milēs	lāpis	ars	jūdex <sup>2</sup>
G. militīs	lapīdīs	artīs	judicīs
D. militī	lapīdī	artī	judicī
A. militēm	lapīdēm	artēm	judicēm
V. milēs	lapīs	ars	judex
A. militē	lapidē	artē	judicē

## PLURAL.

N. militēs	lapīdēs	artēs	judicēs
G. militūm	lapidūm	artiūm	judiciūm

<sup>1</sup> *Impure*; i.e., preceded by a consonant.

<sup>2</sup> X in rex = *gs*; *g* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending: but in judex, x = *cs*; *c* belonging to the stem, and *s* being the Nom. ending.

D. militibūs	lapidibūs	artibūs	judicibūs
A. militēs	lapidēs	artēs	judicēs
V. militēs	lapidēs	artēs	judicēs
A. militibūs.	lapidibūs.	artibūs.	judicibūs.

III. Nouns in **as, os, us**, and **e**:—*those in as, os, and us with stem changed, those in e with stem unchanged.*

Civitas, <i>f.</i>	Nepos, <i>m.</i>	Virtus, <i>f.</i>	Mare, <i>n.</i>
<i>state.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>	<i>virtue.</i>	<i>sea.</i>

SINGULAR.

N. civitās	nēpōs	virtūs	mārē
G. civitatīs	nepōtīs	virtūtīs	maris
D. civitatī	nepōtī	virtūtī	marī
A. civitatēm	nepōtēm	virtutēm	marē
V. civitās	nepōs	virtūs	marē
A. civitatē	nepōtē	virtutē	marī <sup>2</sup>

PLURAL.

N. civitatēs	nepōtēs	virtutēs	marīā
G. civitātū <sup>1</sup>	nepōtū	virtūtū	marīū
D. civitatibūs	nepotibūs	virtutibūs	maribūs
A. civitatēs	nepōtēs	virtutēs	marīā
V. civitatēs	nepōtēs	virtutēs	marīā
A. civitatibūs.	nepotibūs.	virtutibūs.	maribūs.

51. CLASS II. — WITHOUT NOMINATIVE ENDING.

I. Nouns in **l** and **r**:—*with stem unchanged in Nominative.*

Sol, <i>m.</i>	Consul, <i>m.</i>	Passer, <i>m.</i>	Vultur, <i>m.</i>
<i>sun.</i>	<i>consul.</i>	<i>sparrow.</i>	<i>vulture.</i>

SINGULAR.

N. sōl	consūl	passēr	vultūr
G. sōlis	consūlīs	passērīs	vultūrīs
D. sōlī	consūlī	passērī	vultūrī
A. sōlēm	consūlēm	passērēm	vultūrēm
V. sōl	consūl	passēr	vultūr
A. sōlē	consūlē	passērē	vultūrē

PLURAL.

N. sōlēs	consūlēs	passērēs	vultūrēs
G.	consūlū	passērū	vultūrū
D. sōlibūs	consulibūs	passeribūs	vulturibūs

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes *civitatiū*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes *mare* in poetry.

A. sölēs	consülēs	passérēs	vultūrēs
V. sölēs	consülēs	passérēs	vultūrēs
A. sölibūs.	consulibūs.	passeribūs.	vulturibūs.

II. Nouns in **o** and **r**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Leo, <i>m.</i>	Virgo, <i>f.</i>	Pater, <i>m.</i>	Pastor, <i>m.</i>
lion.	maiden.	father.	shepherd.

## SINGULAR.

N. leo	virgo	pätër	pastör
G. leönīs	virginīs	pätiris	pastörīs
D. leönī	virginī	patri	pastöri
A. leönēm	virginēm	patrēm	pastörēm
V. leo	virgo	patër	pastör
A. leönē	virginē	patrē	pastörē

## PLURAL.

N. leönēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastörēs
G. leönūm	virginūm	patrūm	pastörūm
D. leonibūs	virginibūs	patribūs	pastörībūs
A. leönēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastörēs
V. leönēs	virginēs	patrēs	pastörēs
A. leonibūs.	virginibūs.	patribūs.	pastörībūs.

III. Nouns in **en**, **us**, and **ut**:—*with stem changed in Nominative.*

Carmen, <i>n.</i>	Opus, <i>n.</i>	Corpus, <i>n.</i>	Capüt, <i>n.</i>
song.	work.	body.	head.

## SINGULAR.

N. carmën	öpüs	corpüs	cäpüt
G. carminīs	opëris	corpörīs	capitūs
D. carminī	opëri	corpöri	capiti
A. carmën	opüs	corpüs	capüt
V. carmën	opüs	corpüs	capüt
A. carminē	opëre	corpöre	capitē

## PLURAL.

N. carminā	opërā	corpërā	capitā
G. carminūm	opërūm	corpörūm	capitūm
D. carminibūs	operibūs	corporibūs	capitibūs
A. carminā	opërā	corpërā	capitā
V. carminā	opërā	corpërā	capitā
A. carminibūs.	operibūs.	corporibūs.	capitibūs.

52. **Case-Endings.** — From an inspection of the paradigms, it will be seen,

1. That the nouns belonging to Class II. differ from those of Class I. only in taking no case-ending in the Nominative and Vocative Singular.

2. That all nouns of both classes are declined with the following

*Case-Endings.*

SINGULAR.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom. <i>s</i> <sup>1</sup> (es, is) ——— <sup>2</sup>	ě ——— <sup>3</sup>
Gen. is	is
Dat. i	i
Acc. ěm (im) <sup>3</sup>	like Nom.
Voc. like Nom.	“ “
Abl. ě, i	ě, i
PLURAL.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neuter.
Nom. ěs	ě, iě
Gen. ům, iům	ům, iům
Dat. ibůs	ibůs
Acc. ěs	ě, iě
Voc. ěs	ě, iě
Abl. ibůs.	ibůs.

53. **Declension.** — To apply these endings in declension, we must know, besides the Nominative Singular,

1. *The Gender*, as that shows which set of endings must be used.

2. *The Genitive Singular* (or some oblique case), as that contains the *stem* (41) to which these endings must be added.

<sup>1</sup> In nouns in *x* (= *cs* or *gs*), *s* is the case-ending, and the *c* or *g* belongs to the stem.

<sup>2</sup> The dash here implies that the case-ending is sometimes wanting, as in all nouns of Class II.

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed endings are less common than the others.



## 54. EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE:

## Class I.

Rūpes,	Gen. rupis, f.	rock;	hospes,	Gen. hospitis, m.	guest.
vestis,	vestis, f.	garment;	cuspis,	cuspidis, f.	spear.
trabs,	trābis, f.	beam;	mons,	montis, m.	mountain.
lex,	lēgis, f.	law;	āpex,	apicis, m.	summit.
libertas,	libertātis, f.	liberty;	sālus,	salūtis, f.	safety.
sedile,	sedilis, n.	seat;			

## Class II.

Exsul,	Gen. exsulis, m. and f.	exile;	dōlor,	Gen. dolōris, m.	pain.
actio,	actiōnis, f.	action;	imāgo,	imaginis, f.	image.
anser,	ansēris, m.	goose;	frāter,	fratris, m.	brother.
nōmen,	nomīnis, n.	name;	tempus,	tempōris, n.	time.

## RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:<sup>1</sup>

Cātōnis ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *the camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *the death of Hamilcar*. Liv.

## MODEL FOR PARSING.

Cātōnis ōrātiōnēs, *Cato's orations*.

*Cātōnis* is a proper noun, as it is the name of a person (31, 1). It is of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40); of Class II., as it has no Nominative Ending (49, II. and 51, II.): STEM, *Cātōn* (41); Nom. *Cato* (*n* dropped, 49, II.). Singu-

<sup>1</sup> The Appositive (363, p. 15) and this qualifying Genitive resemble each other in the fact that they both qualify the meaning of another noun: *Cluilius rex*, *Cluilius* the king; *Cātōnis ōrātiōnes*, *Cato's orations*, or the orations of Cato. Here the Appositive *rex* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *Cluilius* by showing *what* *Cluilius* is meant, — *Cluilius* the king. In a similar manner, the Genitive *Cātōnis* qualifies, or limits, the meaning of *ōrātiōnes* by showing *what* orations are meant, — *the orations of Cato*. Yet the Appositive and the Genitive are readily distinguished by the fact that the former qualifies a noun denoting the same person or

lar:<sup>1</sup> *Cato, Catōnis, Catōni, Catōnem, Cato, Catōne*. It is of the Masculine gender, as the names of males are masculine by 35, I. 1. It is in the Genitive Singular, depending upon *oratiōnes*, according to Rule XVI.: "Any noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive."

THIRD DECLENSION — CONTINUED. — CLASS I.<sup>2</sup>

EXERCISE VIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Civis, civis, m. and f.</i>	<i>citizen.</i>
<i>Lex, lēgis, f.</i>	<i>law.</i>
<i>Mors, mortis, f.</i>	<i>death.</i>
<i>Pax, pācis, f.</i>	<i>peace.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Nubis, nubium. 2. Nubem, nubes. 3. Avis, aves.
4. Avi, avibus. 5. Urbs, urbes. 6. Urbi, urbibus. 7. Rex, reges.
8. Regis, regum. 9. Nubēs, milēs. 10. Nubis, militis.
11. Nubem, militem. 12. Rex, judex. 13. Regis, iudicis.
14. Reges, iudices. 15. Civitas, civitates. 16. Virtus, virtutes.
17. Mors regis.<sup>3</sup> 18. Morte regis. 19. Mortes regum.
20. Virtus iudicis. 21. Pacis gloria.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The citizen, to the citizen, of the citizen, of citizens, for citizens.
2. A cloud, clouds, of a cloud, of clouds, with a cloud, with clouds.
3. A king, a law. 4. Kings, laws.

thing as itself, while the Genitive qualifies a noun denoting a *different* person or thing. Thus, in the examples above, *Clauilius* and the Appositive *rex* denote the *same* person; while *oratiōnes* and the Genitive *Catōnis* denote entirely *different* objects.

<sup>1</sup> As *Cato* is the name of a person, the Plural is seldom used.

<sup>2</sup> This exercise furnishes practice in the declension of nouns belonging to Class I. of the Third Declension. See 50.

<sup>3</sup> *Regis* is in the Genitive, and qualifies the meaning of *mors*, according to Rule XVI. 395.

5. Of the king, of the law. 6. Of the kings, of the laws.  
 7. To the king, to the law. 8. To the kings, to the laws.  
 9. The law of the state.<sup>1</sup> 10. The laws of the state.

### THIRD DECLENSION—CONTINUED.—CLASS II.

#### PREPOSITIONS.

#### RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions.<sup>2</sup>

Ad *amicum scripsi*, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In *cūriam*, *into the senate-house*. Liv. In *Itāliā*,<sup>3</sup> *in Italy*. Nep. Pro *castris*, *before the camp*.

#### MODEL FOR PARSING.

Ad *amicūm*, *To a friend*.

*Amicum* is a noun (31) of the Second Declension (45), as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *amic* (41). Singular: *amicus*, *amīci*, *amīco*, *amicum*, *amice*, *amīco*. Plural: *amīci*, *amicōrum*, *amicis*, *amicos*, *amici*, *amicis*. It is of the Masculine gender by 45, is in the Accusative Singular, and is used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII: "The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions." The Accusative is used with *ad*.

<sup>1</sup> The Latin word for *of the state* will be in the Genitive, according to Rule XVI. 395.

<sup>2</sup> The Preposition is the part of speech which shows the relations of objects to each other: *in Italia esse*, to be in Italy; *ante me*, before me. Here *in* and *ante* are prepositions. In the Vocabularies, each preposition, as it occurs, will be marked as such; and the case which may be used with it will be specified. It has not been thought advisable at this early stage of the course to burden the memory of the learner with a list of prepositions and their cases.

<sup>3</sup> Here the Ablative *Italia* is used with *in*; though, in the second example, the Accusative *cūriam* is used with the same preposition. The rule is, that the Latin preposition *in* is used with the *Accusative* when it means *into*, and with the Ablative when it means *in*.

EXERCISE IX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Ad, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>to, towards.</i>
Cicērō, Cicērōnis, <i>m.</i>	Cicero, the Roman orator.
Consūl, consūlis, <i>m.</i>	consul. <sup>1</sup>
Contrā, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against, contrary to.</i>
Exsūl, exsūlis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>exile.</i>
Frāter, frātris, <i>m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
Nōmēn, nōminis, <i>n.</i>	<i>name.</i>
Orātiō, orātiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>oration, speech.</i>
Orātōr, orātōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>orator.</i>
Victōr, victōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>victor, conqueror.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Leo, leōnis, leōnes. 2. Virgo, virgīnis, virgīnes. 3. Solis, solem, soles. 4. Consūlis, consūlem, consūles. 5. Solibus, consulibus. 6. Passēris, vultūris. 7. Passērum, vultūrum. 8. Patri, pastōri. 9. Patres, pastōres. 10. Carmen, carmina. 11. Caput, capita. 12. Opēris, corpōris. 13. Cicērōnis<sup>2</sup> oratio. 14. Cicērōnis oratiōnes. 15. Oratiōne consūlis. 16. Ad gloriā.<sup>3</sup> 17. Contra regem. ,

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The exile, the exiles. 2. For the exile, for the exiles. 3. Of an exile, of the exiles. 4. The shepherd, the orator. 5. Of shepherds, of orators. 6. Shepherds, orators. 7. Of a shepherd, of an orator. 8. A song, a name. 9. Songs,

<sup>1</sup> The *consuls* were joint presidents of the Roman commonwealth. They were elected annually, and were two in number.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XVI. 395, and Model.

<sup>3</sup> The Accusative *gloriā* is here used with the preposition *ad*, according to Rule XXXII. 432.

names. 10. Of songs, of names. 11. Father, brother. 12. To<sup>1</sup> the father, to the brother. 13. Contrary to the law.<sup>2</sup> 14. Contrary to the laws of the state.

#### FOURTH DECLENSION.

116. Nouns of the fourth declension end in

**us**, — *masculine* ; **u**, — *neuter*.

They are declined as follows :

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .	Cornu, <i>horn</i> .	Case-Endings.	
SINGULAR.			
N. fruct <u>us</u>	corn <u>u</u>	us	u
G. fruct <u>us</u>	corn <u>us</u>	us	us
D. fruct <u>ui</u>	corn <u>u</u>	ui	u
A. fruct <u>uma</u>	corn <u>u</u>	um	u
V. fruct <u>us</u>	corn <u>u</u>	us	u
A. fruct <u>u</u>	corn <u>u</u>	u	u
PLURAL.			
N. fruct <u>us</u>	corn <u>u</u> <u>rum</u>	us	u <u>rum</u>
G. fruct <u>uma</u>	corn <u>uma</u>	um	u <u>m</u>
D. fruct <u>ibus</u>	corn <u>ib</u> <u>us</u>	ibus (u <u>b</u> us)	ibus (u <u>b</u> us)
A. fruct <u>us</u>	corn <u>u</u> <u>rum</u>	us	u <u>rum</u>
V. fruct <u>us</u>	corn <u>u</u> <u>rum</u>	us	u <u>rum</u>
A. fruct <u>ibus</u> .	corn <u>ib</u> <u>us</u> .	ibus (u <u>b</u> us).	ibus (u <u>b</u> us).

1. **Case-Endings.**—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

2. **Examples for Practice.**—*Cantus* song; *currus*, chariot; *cursus*, course; *versus*, verse; *genu*, knee. X

<sup>1</sup> To should still be regarded as a sign of the Dative, though it may sometimes be rendered by the preposition *ad*.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII. 432. The words *contrary to* are to be rendered by a single Latin preposition.

EXERCISE X.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Adventūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>arrival, approach.</i>
Antē, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>before.</i>
Caesar, Caesāris, <i>m.</i>	<i>Caesar, a Roman surname.</i>
Cantūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>singing, song.</i>
Conspectūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>sight, presence.</i>
Exercītūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>army.</i>
Hostis, hostis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>enemy.</i>
Impētūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>attack.</i>
In, <i>prep.</i>	<i>into with acc., in with abl.</i>
Luscinīa, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>nightingale.</i>
Occāsūs, ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>the setting, as of the sun.</i>
Post, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>after.</i>
Ver, veris, <i>n.</i>	<i>spring.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Fructus, cantus. 2. Fructibus, cantibus. 3. Cantus lusciniæ.<sup>1</sup> 4. Cantu lusciniæ. 5. Cantibus lusciniarum.
6. Adventus veris. 7. Post adventum<sup>2</sup> veris.<sup>1</sup> 8. Solis occāsus. 9. Post solis occāsum. 10. Caesāris adventu.
11. Ante adventum Caesāris. 12. Impētus hostium. 13. Impētu hostium. 14. In conspectu exercītus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The army, the armies. 2. For the army, for the armies. 3. Of the army, of the armies. 4. The arrival of the army. 5. Before the arrival of the army. 6. After<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI. See p. 22.

<sup>2</sup> Used with *post*, according to Rule XXXII. See p. 24.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule XXXII. 432, p. 24. The pupil will remember that the English prepositions, *to*, *for*, *with*, *from*, *by*, are generally rendered into Latin by merely putting the noun in the proper case, i.e. in the Dative for *to* or *for*, and in the Ablative for *with*, *from*, *by*. Other English prepositions, *before*, *after*, *behind*, *between*, etc., are rendered into Latin by corresponding Latin prepositions.

the arrival of the consul. 7. The singing of the nightingale. 8. After the setting of the sun. 9. Before the attack of the enemy. 10. After the attack of the enemy.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

119. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, — *feminine*, and are declined as follows:

Dies, <i>day</i> . <sup>1</sup>	Res, <i>thing</i> .	Case-Endings.
SINGULAR.		
N. diēs	rēs	ēs
G. diēi	rēi	eī
D. diēi	rēi	eī
A. diēm	rēm	ēm
V. diēs	rēs	ēs
A. diē	rē	ē
PLURAL.		
N. diēs	rēs	ēs
G. diērum	rērum	ērum
D. diēbus	rēbus	ēbus
A. diēs	rēs	ēs
V. diēs	rēs	ēs
A. diēbus.	rēbus.	ēbus.

1. *Case-Endings*.—Nouns of this declension are declined with the case-endings placed on the right.

*E* in *ei* is generally short when preceded by a consonant, otherwise long.

2. *Examples for Practice*.<sup>2</sup>—*Acies*, battle-array; *effigies*, effigy; *facies*, face; *series*, series; *species*, form; *spes*, hope.

<sup>1</sup> *Dies*, day, is an exception in Gender, as it is generally *masculine*, though sometimes *feminine* in the singular.

<sup>2</sup> Nouns of this declension, except *dies* and *res*, want, in the Plural, the Genitive, Dative, and Ablative. These cases must, therefore, be omitted in declining these examples.

COMPARATIVE VIEW OF THE FIVE DECLENSIONS.

121. Case-Endings of Latin nouns.<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.									
Dec. I.	Dec. II.		Dec. III.		Dec. IV.		D. V.		
Fem.	Masc.	Neut.	M. & F.	Neut.	Masc.	Neut.	Fem.		
N. ā	ūs— <sup>2</sup>	ūm	s (es, is) <sup>3</sup>	— ē—	ūs	ū	ēs		
G. ae	i	i	is	is	ūs	ūs	ēi		
D. ae	ō	ō	i	i	ui	ū	ēi		
A. ām	ūm	ūm	ēm (īm)	like nom.	ūm	ū	ēm		
V. ā	ē—	ūm	like nom.	like nom.	ūs	ū	ēs		
A. ā	ō	ō	ē (i)	ē (i)	ū	ū	ē		
PLURAL.									
N. ae	i	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs		
G. ārum	ōrum	ōrum	ūm (iūm)	ūm (iūm)	uūm	uūm	ērūm		
D. is	is	is	ibūs	ibūs	ibūs (ūbūs)	ibūs (ūbūs)	ebūs		
A. ās	ās	ās	ā (iā)	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs		
V. ae	i	ā	ēs	ā (iā)	ūs	uā	ēs		
A. is.	is	is.	ibūs	ibūs	ibūs (ūbūs)	ibūs (ūbūs)	ebūs.		

EXERCISE XI.

I. Vocabulary.

Aciēs, āciēi, f.	batle-array, army.
Amicūs, i, m.	friend.
Cibūs, i, m.	food.
Dē, prep. with abl.	concerning.
Dies, diēi, m. and f.	day.
Fāciēs, fāciēi, f.	face, appearance.
Nūmērūs, i, m.	number, quantity.
Rēs, rēi, f.	thing, affair.
Spēciēs, spēciēi, f.	appearance.
Spēs, spēi, f.	hope.
Victōriā, ae, f.	victory.

<sup>1</sup> This table presents the endings of all nouns in the Latin language, except a few derived from the Greek.

<sup>2</sup> The dash denotes that the case-ending is sometimes wanting: *er* and *ir* in Dec. II., it will be remembered, are not case-endings, but parts of the stem (45, 1).

<sup>3</sup> The enclosed endings are less common than the others.



II. *Translate into English.*

1. Diēi, diērum, diēbus. 2. Aciei, aciem, acie. 3. Diem, speciem. 4. Die, specie. 5. Res, spes. 6. Rei, spei. 7. Victoriae spes. 8. Victoriae spe. 9. Diēi horae. 10. Numērus diērum. 11. Gloria, cibus, nubes, cantus, facies. 12. Glorīae, cibi, nubis, cantus, faciēi. 13. Gloriam, cibum, nubem, cantum, faciem.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A day, days. 2. Of the day, of the days. 3. For the day, for the days. 4. The thing, the things. 5. With the thing, with the things. 6. Concerning the thing, concerning the things. 7. Of the thing, of the things. 8. Concerning the battle-array. 9. Wisdom, friend, citizen, fruit, hope. 10. For wisdom, for a citizen, for hope.

## CHAPTER II.

## ADJECTIVES.

146. The adjective is that part of speech which is used to qualify nouns: *bōnus*, good; *magnus*, great.

The form of the adjective in Latin depends in part upon the gender of the noun which it qualifies; *bonus puer*, a good boy; *bona puella*, a good girl; *bonum tectum*, a good house. Thus *bonus* is the form of the adjective when used with masculine nouns, *bona* with feminine, and *bonum* with neuter.

147. Some adjectives are partly of the first declension and partly of the second, while all the rest are entirely of the third declension.

## I. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

148. Adjectives of this class have in the nominative singular the endings:

Masc., Dec. II.	Fem., Dec. I.	Neut., Dec. II.
us — <sup>1</sup> ,	a,	um.

They are declined as follows:

*Bonus, good.*

SINGULAR.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. <i>bonūs</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonūma</i>
Gen. <i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonī</i>
Dat. <i>bonō</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonō</i>
Acc. <i>bonūma</i>	<i>bonāma</i>	<i>bonūma</i>
Voc. <i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonūma</i>
Abl. <i>bonō</i>	<i>bonā</i>	<i>bonō</i> ;

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonā</i>
Gen. <i>bonōrum</i>	<i>bonārum</i>	<i>bonōrum</i>
Dat. <i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>
Acc. <i>bonōs</i>	<i>bonās</i>	<i>bonā</i>
Voc. <i>bonī</i>	<i>bonae</i>	<i>bonā</i>
Abl. <i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i>	<i>bonīs</i> .

*Liber, free.*

SINGULAR.

Nom. <i>libēr</i>	<i>libērā</i>	<i>libērūma</i>
Gen. <i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērī</i>
Dat. <i>libērō</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērō</i>
Acc. <i>libērūma</i>	<i>libērāma</i>	<i>libērūma</i>
Voc. <i>libēr</i>	<i>libērā</i>	<i>libērūma</i>
Abl. <i>libērō</i>	<i>libērā</i>	<i>libērō</i> ;

PLURAL.

Nom. <i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērā</i>
Gen. <i>libērōrum</i>	<i>libērārum</i>	<i>libērōrum</i>
Dat. <i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>
Acc. <i>libērōs</i>	<i>libērās</i>	<i>libērā</i>
Voc. <i>libērī</i>	<i>libērae</i>	<i>libērā</i>
Abl. <i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i>	<i>libērīs</i> .

<sup>1</sup> The dash indicates that the ending is sometimes wanting. See 45, 1.

*Aeger, sick.*

## SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegēr</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrī</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrō</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>	<i>aegrām</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aeger</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrūm</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>aegrō</i>	<i>aegrā</i>	<i>aegrō</i> ;

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>aegrōrūm</i>	<i>aegrārum</i>	<i>aegrōrūm</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>aegrōs</i>	<i>aegrās</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>aegrī</i>	<i>aegræ</i>	<i>aegrā</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i>	<i>aegrīs</i> .

1. *Bonus* is declined in the Masc. like *servus* of Dec. II. (45), in the Fem. like *mensa* of Dec. I. (42), and in the Neut. like *templum* of Dec. II. (45).

2. *Liber* differs in declension from *bonus* only in dropping *us* and *e* in the Nom. and Voc. (45, 3, 1). *Aeger* differs from *liber* only in dropping *e* before *r* (45, 3, 2).

3. Most adjectives in *er* are declined like *aeger*.

## RULE XXXIII. — Agreement of Adjectives.

438. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE:

*Fortūna caeca est, Fortune is blind.*<sup>1</sup> Cic. *Verae amicitiae, true friendships.* Cic. *Magister optimus, the best teacher.* Cic.

<sup>1</sup> Here the adjective *caeca* is in the feminine gender, in the singular number, and in the nominative case, to agree with *fortūna*. It is declined like *BONUS*: *caecus, caeca, caecum*.

MODEL FOR PARSING.

*Verae amicitiae, True friendships.*

*Verae* is an adjective (146) of the First and Second Declensions (147): STEM, *ver* (41, 148, 1). Singular: N. *verus, verā, verum*; G. *veri, verae, veri*; D. *vero, verae, vero*; A. *verum, veram, verum*; V. *vere, verā, verum*; A. *vero, verā, vero*. Plural: N. *veri, verae, vera*; G. *verorum, verarum, verorum*; D. *veris, veris, veris*; A. *veros, veras, vera*; V. *veri, verae, vera*; A. *veris, veris, veris*. It is in the Nominative Plural Feminine, and agrees with its noun *amicitiae*, according to Rule XXXIII: "An Adjective agrees with its Noun in GENDER, NUMBER, and CASE."

EXERCISE XII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Annūlus, i, m.</i>	<i>ring.</i>
<i>Aureūs, ā, ūm,<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>golden.</i>
<i>Beātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>happy, blessed.</i>
<i>Bōnūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>good.</i>
<i>Egrēgiūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>distinguished.</i>
<i>Fidūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>faithful.</i>
<i>Grātūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>acceptable, pleasing.</i>
<i>Magnūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>great.</i>
<i>Multūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>much, many.</i>
<i>Puellā, ae, f.</i>	<i>girl.</i>
<i>Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,</i>	<i>beautiful.</i>
<i>Rēgīnā, ae, f.</i>	<i>queen.</i>
<i>Rēgnūm, i, n.</i>	<i>kingdom.</i>
<i>Vērūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>true.</i>
<i>Vitā, ae, f.</i>	<i>life.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The endings *a* and *um* belong respectively to the feminine and to the neuter. Thus *aureus, aurea, aureum*, like *bonus*, 148.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amicus fidus.<sup>1</sup> 2. Amīci fidi. 3. Amīco fido. 4. Amīcum fidum. 5. Amīce fide. 6. Amicōrum fidōrum. 7. Amīcis fidis. 8. Amicos fidos. 9. Corōnā aureā. 10. Corōnae aureae. 11. Corōnam auream. 12. Corōnā aureā. 13. Coronārum aureārum. 14. Corōnis aureis. 15. Corōnas aureas. 16. Donum gratum. 17. Doni grati. 18. Dono grato. 19. Dona grata. 20. Donōrum gratōrum. 21. Donis gratis. 22. Ager pulcher. 23. Puellā pulchrā. 24. Donum pulchrum. 25. Agri pulchri. 26. Puellae pulchrae. 27. Dona pulchra. 28. Beātā vitā. 29. Aureus annūlus. 30. Aurei annūli. 31. Magnā gloriā. 32. Egregiā victoriā.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A true<sup>2</sup> friend. 2. The true<sup>2</sup> friends. 3. For a true friend. 4. For true friends. 5. Of the true friend. 6. Of true friends. 7. True glory. 8. With true glory. 9. Of true glory. 10. An acceptable word. 11. Acceptable words. 12. With acceptable words. 13. Of acceptable words. 14. A beautiful book. 15. The beautiful books. 16. With a beautiful book. 17. Of beautiful books. 18. The beautiful queen. 19. The crown of the beautiful queen. 20. The beautiful crown of the queen. 21. A good king, a good queen, a good kingdom. 22. The brothers of the good king.

---

<sup>1</sup> In Latin the adjective generally follows its noun, as in this example; though sometimes it precedes it, as in English. When emphatic, the adjective is placed before its noun; as, *Verae amicitiae*, true friendships. *Fidus* agrees with *amicus*, according to Rule XXXIII.

<sup>2</sup> Be sure and put the adjective in the right form to agree with its noun, according to Rule XXXIII.

## II. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

150. Adjectives of the third declension may be divided into three classes :

I. Those which have in the nominative singular three different forms, — one for each gender.

II. Those which have two forms, — the masculine and feminine being the same.

III. Those which have but one form, — the same for all genders.

151. I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE ENDINGS of this declension have in the nominative singular :

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<b>er,</b>	<b>is,</b>	<b>e.</b>

They are declined as follows :

### *Acer, sharp.*

#### SINGULAR.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N. acēr</i>	<i>acrīs</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>G. acris</i>	<i>acris</i>	<i>acris</i>
<i>D. acri</i>	<i>acri</i>	<i>acri</i>
<i>A. acrēm</i>	<i>acrēm</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>V. acēr</i>	<i>acris</i>	<i>acrē</i>
<i>A. acri</i>	<i>acri</i>	<i>acri ;</i>

#### PLURAL.

<i>N. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>G. acritūm</i>	<i>acritūm</i>	<i>acritūm</i>
<i>D. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>
<i>A. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>V. acrēs</i>	<i>acrēs</i>	<i>acriā</i>
<i>A. acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs</i>	<i>acribūs.</i>

152. II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO ENDINGS have in the nominative singular:

M. and F.	Neut.	
1. is	e,	for positives.
2. ior (or)	ius (us),	for comparatives.

They are declined as follows:

Tristis, *sad*.

Tristior, *more sad*.<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. tristis	tristē	N. tristior	tristiūs
G. tristis	tristis	G. tristioris	tristiōris
D. tristī	tristī	D. tristiorī	tristiōrī
A. tristēm	tristē	A. tristiorēm	tristiūs
V. tristis	tristē	V. tristior	tristiūs
A. tristī	tristī ;	A. tristiorē (ī)	tristiōrē (ī) ;

PLURAL.

N. tristēs	tristī	N. tristiores	tristiōrē
G. tristium	tristium	G. tristiorum	tristiōrum
D. tristibus	tristibus	D. tristioribus	tristiōribus
A. tristēs	tristī	A. tristiores	tristiōrē
V. tristēs	tristī	V. tristiores	tristiōrē
A. tristibus	tristibus.	A. tristioribus	tristiōribus. X

153. III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE ENDING. — All other adjectives have but one form in the nominative singular for all genders. They generally end in *s* or *x*, sometimes in *l* or *r*, and are declined in the main like nouns of the same endings. The following are examples:

Felix, *happy*.

Prudens, *prudent*.

SINGULAR.

M. and F.	Neut.	M. and F.	Neut.
N. felix	felix	N. prudens	prudens
G. felixis	felixis	G. prudentis	prudentis
D. felicī	felicī	D. prudentī	prudentī
A. felicēm	felix	A. prudentēm	prudens
V. felix	felix	V. prudens	prudens
A. felicē (ī)	felicē (ī) ;	A. prudentē (ī)	prudentē (ī) ;

<sup>1</sup> Comparative. See 160.

PLURAL.

N. felicēs	feli <i>c</i> iā	N. prudentēs	prudentiā
G. feliciūm	feli <i>c</i> iūm	G. prudentiūm	prudentiūm
D. felicibūs	feli <i>c</i> ibūs	D. prudentibūs	prudentibūs
A. felicēs	feli <i>c</i> iā	A. prudentēs	prudentiā
V. felicēs	feli <i>c</i> iā	V. prudentēs	prudentiā
A. felicibūs	feli <i>c</i> ibūs.	A. prudentibūs	prudentibūs.

EXERCISE XIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Acēr, ācris, ācrē,	<i>sharp, severe.</i>
Animāl, ānimālīs, n.	<i>animal.</i>
Brēvis, ē,	<i>short, brief.</i>
Crūdēlis, ē,	<i>cruel.</i>
Dōlōr, dōlōris, m.	<i>pain, grief.</i>
Dux, dūcis, m.	<i>leader.</i>
Fertīlis, ē,	<i>fertile.</i>
Fortis, ē,	<i>brave.</i>
Nāvālis, ē,	<i>naval.</i>
Omnīs, ē,	<i>every, all, whole.</i>
Pugnā, ae, f.	<i>battle.</i>
Sāpiens, sāpientis,	<i>wise.</i>
Singulāris, ē,	<i>singular, remarkable.</i>
Utilis, ē,	<i>useful.</i>

II. Translate into English.

1. Dolor acer. 2. Dolores acres. 3. Lex acris. 4. Legibus acris.
5. Hostis crudelis. 6. Hostem crudēlem.
7. Miles fortis. 8. Virtus militis<sup>1</sup> fortis. 9. Virtute militum<sup>1</sup> fortium.
10. Ager fertilis. 11. In agro fertili. 12. Agros fertiles.
13. In agris fertilibus. 14. Post vitam brevem.
15. Pugnae navales. 16. Post pugnās navāles.
17. Singularis virtus. 18. Singulāri virtute. 19. Omne animal.
20. Omnia animalia.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI.



III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. A useful citizen. 2. Of useful citizens. 3. For a useful citizen. 4. For useful citizens. 5. Of a useful citizen. 6. The wise judge. 7. Wise judges. 8. For the wise judge. 9. For wise judges. 10. Brave soldiers. 11. For brave soldiers. 12. A brave soldier. 13. Of the brave soldier. 14. The brave leader. 15. Brave leaders. 16. The word of the brave leader. 17. By the words of the brave leader.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

160. Adjectives have three forms to denote different degrees of quality. They are usually called the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative degree: *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*,<sup>1</sup> high, higher, highest.

Comparatives and superlatives are sometimes best rendered into English by *too* and *very*, instead of *more* and *most*: *doctus*, learned; *doctior*, more learned, or too learned; *doctissimus*, most learned, or very learned.

161. The Latin, like the English, has two modes of comparison:

I. *Terminational Comparison*—by endings.

II. *Adverbial Comparison*—by adverbs.

## I. TERMINATIONAL COMPARISON.

162. Adjectives are regularly compared by adding to the stem of the positive the endings:

Comparative.			Superlative.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
iōr,	iōr,	iūs.	issimūs,	issimā,	issimūm.

<sup>1</sup> Each of these forms of the adjective is declined. Thus *altus* and *altissimus* are declined like *bonus*, 148: *altus*, *a*, *um*; *alti*, *ae*, *i*; etc.; *altissimus*, *a*, *um*; *altissimi*, *ae*, *i*, etc. *Altior* is declined like *tristior*, 152: *altior*, *altius*; *altioris*, etc.

EXAMPLES.

Altus, altior, altissimus: *high, higher, highest.*

lævis, levior, levissimus: *light, lighter, lightest.*

II. ADVERBIAL COMPARISON.

170. Adjectives which want the terminational comparison form the comparative and superlative, when their signification requires it, by prefixing the adverbs *māgis*, more, and *maxīme*, most, to the positive:

Arduus, māgis arduus, maxīme arduus.

*Arduous, more arduous, most arduous.*

MODEL FOR PARSING.

Orātōr clārīōr, *A more renowned orator.*

*Clarior* is an adjective (146) in the Comparative degree (160, 162), from the positive *clarus*, which is of the First and Second Declensions (148). Positive, *clārus*; STEM, *clār*; Comparative, *clārīor*; Superlative, *clarissimus*. *Clarior* is an adjective of the Third Declension, declined like *tristior* (152). Singular: N. *clarior*, *clarius*; G. *clārīōris*, *clārīōris*, etc.<sup>1</sup> It is in the Nominative Singular Masculine, and agrees with its noun *orātor*, according to Rule XXXIII.<sup>2</sup>

EXERCISE XIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Altūs, ā, ūm,	<i>high, lofty.</i>
Clārūs, ā, ūm,	<i>distinguished, renowned.</i>
Intēr, prep. with acc.	<i>among, in the midst of.</i>
Mons, montīs, m.	<i>mountain.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Orātōr clarus. 2. Orātōr clarior.<sup>3</sup> 3. Orātōr clarissimus. 4. Oratōres clari. 5. Oratōres clariōres.<sup>3</sup> 6. Ora-

<sup>1</sup> Decline through all the cases of both numbers.

<sup>2</sup> Give the Rule.

<sup>3</sup> Declined like *tristior*, 152. Comparatives and superlatives, as well as positives, must agree with their nouns, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

tiores clarissimi. 7. Beata vita. 8. Beatior vita. 9. Beatissima vita. 10. Donum gratum. 11. Donum gratus. 12. Donum gratissimum. 13. Dona grata. 14. Dona gratiora. 15. Dona gratissima. 16. Milites fortissimi. 17. Liber utilis. 18. Libri utiliiores. 19. Libris utilissimis. 20. Mons altus. 21. Montes altiiores.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. A fertile field. 2. A more fertile field. 3. The most fertile field. 4. Fertile fields. 5. More fertile fields. 6. A useful life. 7. A more useful life. 8. The most useful life. 9. Useful lives. 10. More useful lives. 11. The most useful lives. 12. A pleasing song. 13. A more pleasing song. 14. The most pleasing song.

## NUMERALS.

171. Numerals comprise numeral adjectives and numeral adverbs.

### I. NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

172. Numeral adjectives comprise three principal classes:

1. CARDINAL NUMBERS: <sup>1</sup> *unus*, one; *duo*, two.
2. ORDINAL NUMBERS: <sup>1</sup> *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.
3. DISTRIBUTIVES: <sup>1</sup> *singuli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, two each, two apiece.

### 174. TABLE OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.	DISTRIBUTIVES.
1. <i>unus</i> , <i>unā</i> , <i>unū</i> ,	<i>primus</i> , <i>first</i> ,	<i>singuli</i> , <i>one by one</i> .
2. <i>duo</i> , <i>duae</i> , <i>duō</i> ,	<i>secundus</i> , <i>second</i> ,	<i>bini</i> , <i>two by two</i> .
3. <i>tres</i> , <i>triā</i> ,	<i>tertius</i> , <i>third</i> ,	<i>terni</i> ( <i>trini</i> ).
4. <i>quattuor</i> ,	<i>quartus</i> , <i>fourth</i> ,	<i>quaterni</i> .
5. <i>quinque</i> ,	<i>quintus</i> , <i>fifth</i> ,	<i>quini</i> .
6. <i>sex</i> ,	<i>sextus</i> ,	<i>seni</i> .

<sup>1</sup> *Cardinals* denote simply the *number* of objects: *unus*, one; *duo*, two. *Ordinals* denote the *place* of an object in a *series*: *primus*, first; *secundus*.

7. septēm,	septimūs,	septēni.
8. octō,	octāvūs,	octōni.
9. nōvēm,	nōnūs,	nōvēni.
10. dēcēm,	dēcimūs,	dēni.
11. undēcīm,	undēcimūs,	undēni.
12. duōdēcīm,	duōdēcimūs,	duōdēni.
13. trēdēcīm, or dēcēm ēt trēs,	tertius dēcimūs,	terni dēni.
20. vīgintī,	vicēsīmūs,	vicēni.
21. { vīgintī ūnūs,	vicēsīmūs primūs,	vicēni singlī.
{ ūnūs ēt vīgintī,	ūnūs ēt vicēsīmūs,	singlī ēt vicēni.
30. trīgintā,	tricēsīmūs,	tricēni.
40. quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsīmūs,	quadrāgēni.
50. quinquāgintā,	quinquāgēsīmūs,	quinquāgēni.
100. centūm,	centēsīmūs,	centēni.
200. dūcentī, ae, ā,	dūcentēsīmūs,	dūcēni.
1000. millē,	millēsīmūs,	singlā millia.

## DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

### 1. Cardinals.

175. On the declension of cardinals, observe,

1. That the units, *ūnus*, *duo*, and *tres*, are declined.
2. That the other units, all the tens, and *centum*, are indeclinable.
3. That the hundreds are declined.<sup>1</sup>
4. That *mille* is sometimes declined.<sup>2</sup>

176. The first three cardinals are declined as follows:

### 1. Unus, one.

Singular.			Plural.		
N. ūnūs,	ūnā,	ūnūm,	ūnī,	ūnāe,	ūnā,
G. unūs,	unūs,	unūs,	unōrūm,	unārūm,	unōrūm,
D. unī,	unī,	unī,	unis,	unis,	unis,
A. unūm,	unām,	unūm,	unōs,	unās,	unā,
V. unē,	unā,	unūm,			
A. unō,	unā,	unō;	unis,	unis,	unis.

second. *Distributives* denote the number of objects taken at a time: *singlī*, one by one; *binī*, two by two.

<sup>1</sup> These are declined like the plural of *bonus* (148); *ducentī*, *ae*, *a*, two hundred.

<sup>2</sup> Though only in the plural, and only when used substantively. It is then declined like the plural of *mare* (50); *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*.

2. Duo, *two*.

N. duō,  
G. duōrūm,  
D. duōbūs,  
A. duōs, duō,  
A. duōbūs,

duae,  
duārūm,  
duābūs,  
duās,  
duābūs,

duō,  
duōrūm,  
duōbūs,  
duō,  
duōbūs.

3. Tres, *three*.

trēs, m. and f.  
triūm,  
tribūs,  
trēs,  
tribūs,

triā, n.  
triūm,  
tribūs,  
triā,  
tribūs.

## EXERCISE XV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Annūs, 1, m.

year.

Classis, classis, f.

fleet.

Fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f.

fortitude, bravery.

Impēriūm, ii, n.

reign, power.

Nāvis, nāvis, f.

ship.

Proeliūm, ii, n.

battle.

Vīr, vīri, m.

man, hero.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Unus<sup>1</sup> liber. 2. Duo<sup>1</sup> libri. 3. Liber primus.<sup>1</sup> 4. Liber secundus. 5. Tres libri. 6. Tertius liber. 7. Tria bella. 8. Post tria bella. 9. Post tertium bellum. 10. Ante quartum bellum. 11. Quattuor<sup>2</sup> anni. 12. Post bellum quinque annōrum. 13. Decem<sup>2</sup> dies. 14. Decimus dies.<sup>3</sup> 15. Decem horae. 16. Decima hora. 17. Decem proelia. 18. Decimum proelium. 19. Horā diēi decimā.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Five friends. 2. Of five friends. 3. The fifth year. 4. The fifth day. 5. The fifth present. 6. With five presents. 7. Eight books. 8. With eight books. 9. The eighth book. 10. Before the eighth book. 11. The bravery of two soldiers. 12. By the bravery of two soldiers.

<sup>1</sup> Numeral adjectives agree with their nouns, like other adjectives.

<sup>2</sup> The indeclinable numeral adjectives (175, 2) may be used without change of form with nouns of any gender, and in any case.

<sup>3</sup> Dies, it will be remembered, is generally masculine.

# CHAPTER III.

## PRONOUNS.

182. The Pronoun is that part of speech which properly supplies the place of nouns: *ēgo*, I; *tu*, thou.

183. Pronouns are divided into six classes:

1. Personal Pronouns: *tu*, thou.
2. Possessive Pronouns: *meus*, my.
3. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, this.
4. Relative Pronouns: *qui*, who.
5. Interrogative Pronouns: *quis*, who?
6. Indefinite Pronouns: *aliquis*, some one.

### I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

184. Personal Pronouns, so called because they designate the person of the noun which they represent, are *ēgo*, I; *tu*, thou; *sui* (Nom. not used), of himself, herself, itself.

They are declined as follows:

SINGULAR.		
<i>N.</i> <i>ēgō</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>G.</i> <i>mei</i>	<i>tui</i>	<i>sui</i>
<i>D.</i> <i>mihi</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>mē</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>tū</i>	
<i>A.</i> <i>mē</i> ;	<i>tē</i> ;	<i>sē</i> ;
PLURAL.		
<i>N.</i> <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>G.</i> <i>nostrū</i> }	<i>vestrū</i> }	<i>sui</i>
<i>nostrī</i> }	<i>vestrī</i> }	
<i>D.</i> <i>nōbis</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sibi</i>
<i>A.</i> <i>nōs</i>	<i>vōs</i>	<i>sē</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
<i>A.</i> <i>nōbis.</i>	<i>vōbis</i>	<i>sē.</i>

1. **Substantive Pronouns.**—Personal pronouns are also called *Substantive* pronouns, because they are always used as substantives.

2. **Reflexive Pronoun.**—*Sui*, from its reflexive signification, of *himself*, etc., is often called the *Reflexive* pronoun.

## II. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

185. From *Personal* pronouns are formed the *Possessives*:

meus, <i>my</i> ,	noster, <i>our</i> .
tuus, <i>thy, your</i> ,	vester, <i>your</i> .
suus, <i>his, her, its</i> ,	suus, <i>their</i> .

They are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions;<sup>1</sup> *meus, mea, meum*; *noster, nostra, nostrum*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine generally *mi*, sometimes *meus*.

## III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

186. Demonstrative Pronouns, so called because they specify the objects to which they refer, are

*Hic, ille, iste, ipse, is, idem.*

They are declined as follows:

*Hic, this.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> hic	haec	hœc	hī	hae	haec
<i>G.</i> hujūs	hujūs	hujūs	hōrūm	hārūm	hōrūm
<i>D.</i> huic	huic	huic	his	his	his
<i>A.</i> hunc	hanc	hœc	hōs	hās	haec
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> hœc	hāc	hœc;	his	his	his.

*Illē, he or that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> illē	illā	illūd	illī	illae	illā
<i>G.</i> illiūs	illiūs	illiūs	illōrūm	illārūm	illōrūm
<i>D.</i> illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>A.</i> illūm	illām	illūd	illōs	illās	illā
<i>V.</i>					
<i>A.</i> illō	illā	illō;	illis	illis	illis.

<sup>1</sup> See *bonus* and *aeger*, 148.

*Istě, that.*

*Istě, that*, is declined like *illě*. It usually refers to objects which are present to the person addressed, and sometimes expresses contempt.

*Ipsě, self, he.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ipsě	ipsă	ipsŭm	ipsi	ipse	ipsă
G. ipsiŭs	ipsiŭs	ipsiŭs	ipsōrŭm	ipsārŭm	ipsōrŭm
D. ipsi	ipsi	ipsi	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
A. ipsŭm	ipsām	ipsŭm	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsă
V.					
A. ipō	ipă	ipō ;	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis.

*Is, he, that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is	eă	id	ii	eae	eă
G. ejŭs	ejŭs	ejŭs	eōrŭm	eārŭm	eōrŭm
D. ei	ei	ei	iis (eis)	iis (eis)	iis (eis)
A. eiŭm	eām	id	eōs	eās	eă
V.					
A. eō	eă	eō ;	iis (eis)	iis (eis)	iis (eis).

*Idem, the same.*

*Idem*, compounded of *is* and *dem*, is declined like *is*, but shortens *isdem* to *idēm*, and *iddēm* to *idēm*, and changes *m* to *n* before the ending *dem* ; thus :

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. idēm	eădēm	idēm	idēm	eadēm	eădēm
G. ejusdēm	ejusdēm	ejusdēm	eōrundēm	eārundēm	eōrundēm
D. eidēm	eidēm	eidēm	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm
A. eundēm	eandēm	idēm	eōsdēm	eāsdēm	eădēm
V.					
A. eōdēm	eădēm	eōdēm ;	iisdēm	iisdēm	iisdēm.

IV. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

187. The Relative *qui*, who, so called because it relates to some noun or pronoun, expressed or understood, called its antecedent, is declined as follows :



SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quī	quae	quōd	quī	quae	quae
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
D. cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
A. quēm	quā	quōd	quōs	quās	quae
V.					
A. quō	quā	quō ;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

## V. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

188. Interrogative Pronouns are used in asking questions. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui*, with their compounds.

*Quis* (who, which, what?) is generally used substantively, and is declined as follows:

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis	quae	quīd	quī	quae	quae
G. cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrūm	quārūm	quōrūm
D. cui	cui	cui	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs
A. quēm	quā	quīd	quōs	quās	quae
V.					
A. quō	quā	quō ;	quibūs	quibūs	quibūs.

*Qui* (which, what?) is generally used adjectively, and is declined like the *relative qui*.

## VI. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

189. Indefinite Pronouns do not refer to any definite persons or things. The most important are

*Quis* and *qui*, with their compounds.

190. *Quis*, any one, *qui*, any one, any, are the same in form and declension as the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*.<sup>1</sup>

191. From *quis* and *qui* are formed

## I. The Indefinites:

aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid	or aliquod,	some, some one.
quispiam,	quaepiam,	quidpiam	or quodpiam,	some, some one.
quidam,	quaedam,	quiddam	or quoddam,	certain, certain one.
quisquam,		quidquam,		any one.

<sup>1</sup> But after *si*, *nisi*, *ne*, and *num*, the Feminine Singular and the Neuter Plural have *quae* or *qua*; *si quae*, *si qua*. In like manner, *aliquis* has *aliqua* in the Feminine Singular and in the Neuter Plural.

II. *The General Indefinites:*

quisque,	quaque,	quidque	or quodque,	every, every one.
quivis,	quaevis,	quidvis	or quodvis,	any one you please.
quilibet,	quaelibet,	quidlibet	or quodlibet,	any one you please.

EXERCISE XVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Consiliū, ii, n.	design, plan.
Epistolā, ae, f.	letter.
Ex, prep. with abl.	from.
Insulā, ae, f.	island.
Pārens, parentis, m. and f.	parent.
Pars, partis, f.	part, portion.
Pātriā, ae, f.	country, native country.
Praeclārus, ā, ūm,	distinguished.
Prātum, i, n.	meadow.
Pro, prep. with abl.	for, in behalf of.
Quivis, quaevis, quodvis,	whoever, whatever.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mihi, tibi, sibi. 2. Ad me,<sup>1</sup> ad te. 3. Contra nos, contra se. 4. Ante vos, ante nos. 5. Pro vobis.<sup>1</sup> 6. Meā<sup>2</sup> vitā. 7. Patriā tuā. 8. Pro patriā tuā.<sup>2</sup> 9. Contra patriam tuam. 10. Nostra consilia. 11. Nostri<sup>2</sup> consiliis. 12. Vestri patres. 13. In nostrā patriā. 14. Hic<sup>2</sup> puer, hi puēri. 15. Haec corōnā, hae corōnae. 16. Hoc donum, haec dona. 17. Haec urbs praeclārā. 18. Ex hac vitā. 19. Illius libri. 20. In eā pugnā. 21. In eōdem prato. 22. Quae<sup>2</sup> urbs?

<sup>1</sup> See 184, 1. Substantive pronouns are used in the several cases like nouns, and are parsed by the same rules. See Rule XXXII. 432. Other pronouns are sometimes used as nouns, and parsed in the same way.

<sup>2</sup> The *Possessive*, the *Demonstrative*, and the *Interrogative* pronouns, in this exercise, are all used as *adjectives*, and agree with their nouns, like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. 438, p. 32. Hence *meā* is in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with *vitā*; *nostri*, in the Dative or Ablative Plural Neuter, to agree with *consiliis*; *hic*, in the Nominative Singular Masculine, to agree with *puer*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We, you. 2. You, me, himself. 3. For you, for me, for himself. 4. Of himself, of you. 5. Against you, against me. 6. My book, your book, his book. 7. My books, your books, his books. 8. Our parents, your parents, their parents. 9. This letter, that letter. 10. These letters, those letters. 11. This city, that city. 12. These cities, those cities. 13. After that victory. 14. The same words. 15. With the same words.

## CHAPTER IV.

## VERBS.

192. Verbs, in Latin, as in English, express existence, condition, or action: *est*, he is; *dormit*, he is sleeping; *lęgit*, he reads.

193. Verbs comprise two principal classes:

I. TRANSITIVE VERBS, — which admit a direct object of their action: *servum*<sup>1</sup> *verbęrat*, he beats the slave.

II. INTRANSITIVE VERBS, — which do not admit such an object: *puer currit*, the boy runs.

194. Verbs have *Voice*, *Mood*, *Tense*, *Number*, and *Person*.

## I. VOICES.

195. There are two Voices:<sup>2</sup>

I. THE ACTIVE VOICE, — which represents the subject as acting or existing: *pāter filium amat*, the father loves his son; *est*, he is.

<sup>1</sup> Here *servum*, the slave, is the direct object of the action denoted by the verb *beats*: *beats* (what?) *the slave*.

<sup>2</sup> *Voice* shows whether the subject *acts* (Active Voice), or is *acted upon* (Passive Voice).

II. THE PASSIVE VOICE, — which represents the subject as acted upon by some other person or thing: *filius a patre amātur*, the son is loved by his father.

## II. MOODS.

196. Moods<sup>1</sup> are either Definite or Indefinite:

I. The **Definite** or **Finite Moods** make up the Finite Verb; they are:

1. THE INDICATIVE MOOD, — which either asserts something as a *fact*, or inquires after the fact: *lĕgit*, he is reading; *lĕgitne*, is he reading?

2. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, — which expresses, not an actual fact, but a *possibility* or *conception*, often rendered by *may*, *can*, etc.: *lĕgat*, he may read, let him read.

3. THE IMPERATIVE MOOD, — which expresses a *command* or an *entreaty*: *lĕge*, read thou.

II. The **Indefinite Moods** express the meaning of the verb in the form of nouns or adjectives; they are:

1. THE INFINITIVE, — which, like the English Infinitive, gives the simple meaning of the verb, without any necessary reference to person or number: *lĕgĕre*, to read.

2. THE GERUND, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in the *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative singular*. It corresponds to the English participial noun in ING: *amandī*, of loving; *amandī causā*, for the sake of loving.

3. THE SUPINE, — which gives the meaning of the verb in the form of a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the *accusative* and *ablative singular*: *amātum*, to love, for loving; *amātu*, to be loved, in loving.

4. THE PARTICIPLE, — which, like the English Participle, gives the meaning of the verb in the form of an adjective.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Mood*, or *Mode*, means *manner*, and relates to the manner in which the meaning of the verb is expressed, as will be seen by observing the force of the several Moods.

A Latin verb may have four participles: two in the Active, the Present and Future, — *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love: and two in the Passive, the Perfect and Future, — *amatus*, loved; *amandus*, deserving to be loved.

### III. TENSES.

197. There are six tenses:<sup>1</sup>

#### I. THREE TENSES FOR INCOMPLETE ACTION:

1. Present: *amo*, I love.
2. Imperfect: *amābam*, I was loving.
3. Future: *amābo*, I shall love.

#### II. THREE TENSES FOR COMPLETED ACTION:

1. Perfect: *amāvi*, I have loved, I loved.
2. Pluperfect: *amavēram*, I had loved.
3. Future Perfect: *amavēro*, I shall have loved.

### 198. REMARKS ON TENSES.

1. **Present Perfect and Historical Perfect.** — The Latin Perfect sometimes corresponds to our Perfect with *have* (*have loved*), and is called the *Present Perfect*, or *Perfect Definite*; and sometimes to our Imperfect or Past (*loved*), and is called the *Historical Perfect*, or *Perfect Indefinite*.

2. **Principal and Historical.** — Tenses are also distinguished as

1) *Principal*: — Present, Present Perfect, Future, and Future Perfect.

2) *Historical*: — Imperfect, Historical Perfect, and Pluperfect.

3. **Tenses Wanting.** — The Subjunctive wants the Future and Future Perfect; the Imperative has only the Present and Future; the Infinitive, only the Present, Perfect, and Future.

### IV. NUMBERS.

199. There are two Numbers:<sup>2</sup> SINGULAR and PLURAL.

<sup>1</sup> *Tense* means *time*, and is employed to designate the *time* of an action or event.

<sup>2</sup> *Number* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to number in nouns. See 37.

V. PERSONS.

200. There are three Persons:<sup>1</sup> FIRST, SECOND, and THIRD.

CONJUGATION.

201. Regular verbs are inflected, or conjugated, in four different ways, and are accordingly divided into Four Conjugations, distinguished from each other by the

INFINITIVE ENDINGS.

Conj. I.	Conj. II.	Conj. III.	Conj. IV.
<b>āre,</b>	<b>ēre,</b>	<b>ere,</b>	<b>ire.</b>

202. **Principal Parts.**—Four forms of the verb—the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and Supine<sup>2</sup>—are called, from their importance, the *Principal Parts* of the verb.

203. **Entire Conjugation.**—In any regular verb,

1. The VERB-STEM may be found by dropping the Infinitive Ending: *amāre*; stem, *am*.
2. The PRINCIPAL PARTS may be formed from this stem by means of proper endings.
3. The ENTIRE CONJUGATION of the verb through all its parts may be readily formed from these Principal Parts by means of the proper endings.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Person* in verbs corresponds, it will be observed, to person in nouns. See 37.

<sup>2</sup> In the Active Voice, all these four forms are usually given as Principal Parts; but, in the Passive, only the first three.

<sup>3</sup> In the Paradigms of regular verbs, the endings, both those which distinguish the Principal Parts and those which distinguish the forms derived from those parts, are separately indicated, and should be carefully noticed.

204. *Sum, I am.*

*Sum* is used as an auxiliary in the passive voice of regular verbs. Accordingly, its conjugation, though quite irregular, must be given at the outset.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
<i>sūm,</i>	<i>essē,</i>	<i>fuī,</i>	—. <sup>1</sup>

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>sūm,</i>	<i>I am,</i>	<i>sūmūs,</i>	<i>we are,</i>
<i>ēs,</i>	<i>thou art,<sup>2</sup></i>	<i>estis,</i>	<i>you are,</i>
<i>est,</i>	<i>he is ;</i>	<i>sunt,</i>	<i>they are.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I was.*

<i>ērām,</i>	<i>I was,</i>	<i>ērāmūs,</i>	<i>we were,</i>
<i>erās,</i>	<i>thou wast,</i>	<i>erātis,</i>	<i>you were,</i>
<i>erāt,</i>	<i>he was ;</i>	<i>erant,</i>	<i>they were.</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be.*

<i>ērō,</i>	<i>I shall be,</i>	<i>ērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall be,</i>
<i>eris,</i>	<i>thou wilt be,</i>	<i>eritis,</i>	<i>you will be,</i>
<i>erit,</i>	<i>he will be ;</i>	<i>erunt,</i>	<i>they will be.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I have been, was.*

<i>fuī,</i>	<i>I have been,</i>	<i>fuīmūs,</i>	<i>we have been,</i>
<i>fuistī,</i>	<i>thou hast been,</i>	<i>fuistis,</i>	<i>you have been,</i>
<i>fuīt,</i>	<i>he has been ;</i>	<i>fuērunt,</i>	<i>they have been.</i>
		<i>fuērē,</i>	

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been.*

<i>fuērām,</i>	<i>I had been,</i>	<i>fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>we had been,</i>
<i>fuērās,</i>	<i>thou hadst been,</i>	<i>fuērātis,</i>	<i>you had been,</i>
<i>fuērāt,</i>	<i>he had been ;</i>	<i>fuērant,</i>	<i>they had been.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been.*

<i>fuērō,</i>	<i>I shall have been,</i>	<i>fuērīmūs,</i>	<i>we shall have been,</i>
<i>fuērīs,</i>	<i>thou wilt have been,</i>	<i>fuērītis,</i>	<i>you will have been,</i>
<i>fuērīt,</i>	<i>he will have been ;</i>	<i>fuērint,</i>	<i>they will have been.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The Supine is wanting in this verb.

<sup>2</sup> Or, *you are*: *thou* is confined mostly to solemn discourse: in ordinary English, *you are* is used both in the singular and in the plural.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be.*<sup>1</sup>

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.	
sīm,	<i>I may be,</i>	sīmūs,	<i>we may be,</i>	
sīs,	<i>thou mayst be,</i>	sītīs,	<i>you may be,</i>	
sīt,	<i>he may be ;</i>	sint,	<i>they may be.</i>	

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be.*

essēm,	<i>I might be,</i>	essēmūs,	<i>we might be,</i>
essēs,	<i>thou mightst be,</i>	essētīs,	<i>you might be,</i>
essēt,	<i>he might be ;</i>	essent,	<i>they might be.</i>

PERFECT.

*I may or can have been.*

fuērīm,	<i>I may have been,</i>	fuērīmūs,	<i>we may have been,</i>
fuērīs,	<i>thou mayst have been,</i>	fuērītīs,	<i>you may have been,</i>
fuērīt,	<i>he may have been ;</i>	fuērint,	<i>they may have been.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been.*

fuissēm,	<i>I might have been,</i>	fuissēmūs,	<i>we might have been,</i>
fuissēs,	<i>thou mightst have been,</i>	fuissētīs,	<i>you might have been,</i>
fuissēt,	<i>he might have been ;</i>	fuissent,	<i>they might have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ēs,	<i>be thou,</i>	estē,	<i>be ye.</i>
FUT. estō,	<i>thou shalt be,<sup>2</sup></i>	estōtē,	<i>ye shall be,</i>
estō,	<i>he shall be ;</i>	suntō,	<i>they shall be.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. essē,	<i>to be.</i>		
PERF. fuissē,	<i>to have been.</i>		
FUT. fūtūrūs <sup>3</sup> essē,	<i>to be about to be.</i>	FUT. fūtūrūs, <sup>3</sup>	<i>about to be.</i>

<sup>1</sup> The Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*: sit, *he may be, may he be, let him be.*

<sup>2</sup> The Future is sometimes best rendered like the Present, or with *let*: esto, *thou shalt be, or be thou ; suntō, they shall be, or let them be.*

<sup>3</sup> Futūrus is declined like *bonus* ; N. futūrus, a, um, G. futūri, ae, i ; so in the Infinitive : fūtūrus, a, um esse.



### RULE XXXV.—Verb with Subject.

460. A Finite<sup>1</sup> Verb agrees with its Subject<sup>2</sup> in NUMBER and PERSON:

*Deus mundum aedificāvit,*<sup>3</sup> *God made the world.* Cic. *Ego rēges ejēci, vos tyrānnos intrōdūcītis, I have banished kings, you introduce tyrants.* Cic.

1. PARTICIPLES IN COMPOUND TENSES.—These agree with the subject, according to Rule XXXIII. page 32:

*Thebāni accūsātī sunt,*<sup>4</sup> *The Thebans were accused.* Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED.—The subject is generally omitted—

1) When it is a Personal Pronoun, or can be readily supplied from the context:

*Discipūlos mōneo,*<sup>5</sup> *ut stūdia āment,*<sup>6</sup> *I instruct pupils to love<sup>6</sup> their studies.* Quint.

<sup>1</sup> See 196, I.

<sup>2</sup> With the Active Voice of a Transitive Verb, the *Subject* represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *performs* the action; as, *Deus* in the first example, *God made*: but, with the Passive Voice, it represents the person (or thing, one or more) who *receives* the action, i.e. *is acted upon*, as, *Thebāni*, 460, 1: *the Thebans were accused*.

<sup>3</sup> *Aedificāvit* is in the Third Person and in the Singular Number, because its subject *deus* is in that person and number. *Ejēci* is in the First Person Singular, to agree with its subject *ego*; and *intrōdūcītis* in the Second Person Plural, to agree with its subject *vos*.

<sup>4</sup> The verb *accūsātī sunt* is in the Third Person Plural, to agree with its subject *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXV.; but the participle *accūsātī*, which is one element of the verb, is in the Nominative Plural Masculine, to agree with its noun *Thebāni*, according to Rule XXXIII.

<sup>5</sup> The subject of *moneo* is *ego*. It is omitted, because it is a Personal Pronoun, and is, accordingly, fully implied in the verb, as the ending *eo* shows, as we shall soon see, that the subject cannot be *you, he, or they*, but must be *I*.

*Ut—ament* means literally *that they may love*. The subject of *ament* is the pronoun *ii*, they, referring to *discipūlos*. It is omitted, partly because it is implied in the ending *ent*, but more especially because it can be so readily supplied from *discipūlos*, which shows *who* are here meant by *they*.

<sup>6</sup> *To love*, or, more literally, *that they may love*.

The Pronoun may be expressed for emphasis or contrast, as in the second example under the rule.

# I. DIRECTIONS FOR PARSING VERBS.

In parsing a verb,

1. Tell whether it is transitive or intransitive (193), name the Conjugation to which it belongs, give the Present Indicative Active and the Stem (203).
2. Give the Principal Parts (202), and inflect the tense in which the given form is found.<sup>1</sup>
3. Give the voice, mood, tense, number, and person.
4. Name the subject, and give the Rule for agreement.

## MODELS FOR PARSING THE VERB SUM.

### 1. *Sum with Subject.*

Nōs<sup>2</sup> ērāmūs,      *We were.*

*Erāmūs* is an intransitive irregular<sup>3</sup> verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*, — <sup>4</sup>. Inflection of tense (Imperfect Indicative): *eram, eras, erat, erāmūs, erātis, erant*. The form *erāmūs* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Imperfect* tense, *First* person, *Plural* number, and agrees with its *subject nos*, according to Rule XXXV.: “A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON.”

### 2. *Sum without Subject.*<sup>5</sup>

Fui, *I have been.*

*Fui* is an intransitive irregular verb, from *sum*. Principal Parts: *sum, esse, fui*. Inflection of tense (Perfect Indicative): *fui, fuisti*,

<sup>1</sup> That is, if the form occurs in a given tense of the Indicative, give the several forms for the different persons and numbers in that tense and mood. The teacher may also find it convenient to require the synopsis of the mood till the required tense is found.

<sup>2</sup> *Nos* is the Subject. With an intransitive verb, the Subject represents the person (or thing) who is in the condition, or state, denoted by the verb.

<sup>3</sup> Hence it does not belong to either of the regular conjugations.

<sup>4</sup> The *Supine* is wanting.

<sup>5</sup> That is, without any subject expressed.

*fuit*; *fulmus*, *fuistis*, *fuērunt*, or *fuere*. The form *fui* is found in the *Indicative* mood, *Perfect* tense, *First* person, *Singular* number, and agrees with its subject *ego* omitted (though fully implied<sup>1</sup> in the ending *i* of *fui*), according to Rule XXXV.

### EXERCISE XVII.

#### I. Translate into English.

1. Sum, sumus, sunt.<sup>2</sup> 2. Es, est, estis. 3. Eram, erāmus.<sup>2</sup> 4. Erat, erant. 5. Eris, eritis.<sup>2</sup> 6. Erit, erant.
7. Fui, fuēram, fuēro. 8. Fuimus, fuerāmus, fuerimus.
9. Fuisti, fuistis. 10. Fuit, fuērunt. 11. Fuērat, fuērant.
12. Fuērit, fuērint. 13. Sim, simus. 14. Sit, sint. 15. Essem, essēmus. 16. Esset, essent. 17. Fuērim, fuissēmus.
18. Fuerimus, fuissēmus. 19. Fuērit, fuērint. 20. Fuisset, fuissent. 21. Es, este. /

#### II. Translate into Latin.

1. He<sup>3</sup> is, they<sup>3</sup> are. 2. He has been, they have been.
3. He will be, they will be. 4. He was, they were. 5. He will have been, they will have been. 6. He had been, they had been.
7. I<sup>3</sup> was, you were. 8. We have been, you have been. 9. You may be, they may be. 10. He would be, they would be. 11. I might have been, we might have been.

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XXXV., 2, together with the note.

<sup>2</sup> In parsing the forms contained in this Exercise, observe the second Model just given. If the verb is of the first person, supply, as subject, the personal pronoun (184) of the first person; i.e., *ego* for the singular, and *nos* for the plural. If the verb is of the second person, supply the personal pronoun of the second person; i.e., *tu* for the singular, and *vos* for the plural. If the verb is of the third person, supply the demonstrative pronoun *is* (186) for the singular, and *ii* for the plural, as the personal pronoun *sui* is not used in the Nominative: hence, *ego sum*, *nos sumus*, *ii sunt*.

<sup>3</sup> The English pronouns in this Exercise are not to be rendered by the corresponding Latin pronouns, as the latter may be implied in the ending of the verb, as in the Latin forms above: hence, *he is* = *est*.

SUM WITH SUBJECT AND ADJECTIVE.

RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite<sup>1</sup> Verb is put in the Nominative :

Servius<sup>2</sup> regnāvit, *Servius reigned*. Liv. Pātent portae, *The gates are open*. Cic. Rex vicit, *The king conquered*. Liv.

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

Ego rēges ejēci, *I have banished kings*. Cic.

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. See 460, 2 ; page 54.

MODEL FOR PARSING SUBJECTS.

Rex vicit, *The king conquered*.

*Rex* is a noun (31) of the Third Declension, as it has *is* in the Genitive Singular (40) ; of Class I., as it has a nominative ending *s* ( $x=g-s$ , of which *s* is the ending, as *g* belongs to the stem. See 50, I. note) ; STEM, *reg*. Singular : *rex, regis, regi, regem, rex, rege*. Plural : *reges, regum, regibus, reges, reges, regibus*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 35, I. 1. ; is in the Nominative Singular ; and is the subject of *vicit*, according to Rule III : “ The Subject of a Finite Verb is put in the Nominative.”

EXERCISE XVIII.

I. Vocabulary.

Cātō, Cātōnis, <i>m</i> .	<i>Cato</i> , a distinguished Roman.
Crūdūs, ū, ūm,	<i>unripe</i> .
Diligens, Diligentis,	<i>diligent</i> .
Discipulūs, ī, <i>m</i> .	<i>pupil</i> .

<sup>1</sup> See 196, I.

<sup>2</sup> In these examples, the subjects are *Servius*, *portae*, and *rex*.

Germāniā, ae, f.	Germany.
Jūcundūs, ā, ūm.	pleasant, delightful.
Laudābilis, ē.	praiseworthy, laudable.
Mātūrūs, ā, ūm.	ripe.
Pōmum, i, n.	fruit.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Pax<sup>1</sup> jucunda<sup>2</sup> est.<sup>3</sup> 2. Pax jucunda erit. 3. Vita brevis est. 4. Cato bonus fuit. 5. Cives boni fuērunt. 6. Virtus laudabilis est. 7. Libri utiles sunt. 8. Illi libri utiles erunt. 9. Ille liber utilis fuērat. 10. Utilis<sup>4</sup> fuisti. 11. Utiles fuistis. 12. Germania fertilis est. 13. Agri fertiles fuērunt. 14. Pomum crudeum est. 15. Poma cruda sunt. 16. Poma matūra erunt. 17. Miles fortis est. 18. Milites fortes sunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. The pupil is diligent.<sup>5</sup> 2. The pupils were diligent. 3. The boy is good. 4. He will be happy. 5. Good boys are happy. 6. You may be happy. 7. We might have been happy. 8. This soldier will be useful. 9. These soldiers have been useful. 10. Brave soldiers are useful. 11. You will be useful. 12. Let us be useful.

<sup>1</sup> Pax is the subject of *est*, and is therefore in the Nominative, according to Rule III.

<sup>2</sup> Jucunda is an adjective in the Nominative Singular Feminine, to agree with its noun *pax*, according to Rule XXXIII., page 32.

<sup>3</sup> Est is a verb in the Indicative mood, Present tense, Third person, Singular number, and agrees with its subject *pax*, according to Rule XXXV., page 54.

<sup>4</sup> Utilis agrees with the omitted subject *tu*, implied in the ending of the verb.

<sup>5</sup> In translating English into Latin, the pupil is expected, in the arrangement of words, to imitate the order followed in the Latin Exercises. — He will observe that the subject stands first, and the verb last. But sometimes the verb precedes one or more words in the sentence. Thus the sentence, *Pax jucunda est*, might be *Pax est jucunda*.

SUM WITH PREDICATE NOUN.

**RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.**

362. A Predicate Noun<sup>1</sup> denoting the same person or thing as its subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,<sup>1</sup> *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est declaratus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

MODEL FOR PARSING PREDICATE NOUNS.

Egō sūm nuntiūs, *I am a messenger.*

*Nuntius* is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *nunti*. Singular; *nuntius*, *nuntii*, *nuntio*, *nuntium*, *nuntie*, *nuntio*. Plural; *nuntii*, *nuntiorum*, *nuntius*, *nuntios*, *nuntii*, *nuntius*. It is of the Masculine Gender by 45; is in the Nominative Singular, and, as a Predicate Noun, agrees in case with its subject *ego*, according to Rule I: "A Predicate Noun denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE."

346. I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion:

Miltiades accusatus est, *Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question:

Quis non paupertatem extimescit, *Who does not fear poverty?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun,

<sup>1</sup> Every sentence consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied:

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.

2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject.

Thus, in the first example under the Rule, *ego*, *I*, is the *subject*, and *sum nuntius* is the *predicate*. When the predicate thus consists of a *noun* with the verb *sum*, or of a *noun* with a passive verb, the *noun* thus used is called a *predicate noun*. Accordingly, *nuntius* in the first example, and *rex* in the second, are *predicate nouns*.

adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne*, *nonne*, *num* :

- 1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne*, Is he writing ?  
*Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.
- 2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit*,  
Is he not writing ?
- 3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit*, Is he  
writing ?

## EXERCISE XIX.

### I. Vocabulary.

<i>Ancūs</i> , i, m.	<i>Ancus</i> , Roman king.
<i>Conditōr</i> , conditōris, m.	<i>founder</i> .
<i>Dēmōsthēnēs</i> , is, m.	<i>Demosthenes</i> , Athenian orator.
<i>Ebriētās</i> , ebriētātis, f.	<i>drunkenness</i> .
<i>Graecūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>Greek</i> , <i>Grecian</i> .
<i>Graecus</i> , i, m.	<i>Greek</i> , a <i>Greek</i> .
<i>Insāniā</i> , ae, f.	<i>insanity</i> , <i>madness</i> .
<i>Inventōr</i> , inventōris, m.	<i>inventor</i> .
<i>Mātēr</i> , mātēris, f.	<i>mother</i> .
<i>Mundūs</i> , i, m.	<i>world</i> , <i>universe</i> .
<i>Nonnē</i> , interrog. part.	<i>expects answer yes</i> .
<i>Nūm</i> , interrog. part.	<i>expects answer no</i> .
<i>Philōsōphiā</i> , ae, f.	<i>philosophy</i> .
<i>Rōmā</i> , ae, f.	<i>Rome</i> .
<i>Rōmānūs</i> , ā, ūm,	<i>Roman</i> .
<i>Rōmānūs</i> , i, m.	<i>Roman</i> , a <i>Roman</i> .
<i>Rōmūlūs</i> , i, m.	<i>Romulus</i> , the founder of <i>Rome</i> .
<i>Scipiō</i> , Scipiōnis, m.	<i>Scipio</i> , Roman general.

### II. Translate into English.\*

1. *Ancus*<sup>2</sup> fuit<sup>3</sup> rex<sup>4</sup>. 2. *Nonne*<sup>5</sup> *Romūlus* rex fuērat ?
3. *Romūlus* rex fuērat. 4. *Quis* conditōr *Romae*<sup>6</sup> fuit ?
5. *Romūlus* conditōr *Romae* fuit. 6. *Ebrietas* est *insania*.
7. *Patria*<sup>7</sup> est parens omnium nostrum.<sup>8</sup> 8. *Graeci*<sup>7</sup> multā  
rum artium<sup>8</sup> inventōres erant. 9. *Demosthēnes* orātor fuit.

\* For Notes to the references on this page, see page 61.

10. Num hic puer orātor erit? 11. Ille puer orātor sit.  
12. Philosophia est mater artium. 13. Cicēro clarissimus<sup>9</sup>  
orātor fuit. 14. Cantus luscinae jucundissimus<sup>9</sup> est. /

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Who<sup>10</sup> was the king?<sup>11</sup> 2. Was not<sup>12</sup> Romulus king?<sup>11</sup>  
3. Romulus was king. 4. Who was the leader of the  
Romans? 5. Was not<sup>12</sup> Scipio the leader of the Romans?  
6. Scipio was the leader of the Romans. 7. Your brother  
is an orator. 8. This boy is my brother. 9. These boys  
will be diligent pupils. 10. These pupils will be diligent.

<sup>1</sup> In preparing the longer and more difficult sentences in this and in the subsequent exercises, it is recommended that the pupil should follow the Suggestions which are inserted in this volume, page 143, and which are intended to aid him in discerning the *process* by which he may most readily and surely reach the meaning of a Latin sentence.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule III. page 57.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule XXXV. page 54. The verb sometimes precedes the Predicate Noun, as in this sentence; and sometimes follows it, as in several of the following sentences.

<sup>4</sup> *Rex* is a *Predicate Noun*, denoting the same person as its subject *Ancus*, and is therefore in the Nominative, to agree with that subject in *case*, according to Rule I. page 59.

<sup>5</sup> See 346, II. 1 above.

<sup>6</sup> Genitive, according to Rule XVI. page 22.

<sup>7</sup> In this sentence, before turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, notice carefully the endings of the several words in accordance with Suggestion IV. What parts of speech do you find? What cases? What mood, tense, number, and person?

In accordance with Suggestion V., what order will you follow in looking out the words in the Vocabulary?

<sup>8</sup> *Artium* depends upon *inventōres*.

<sup>9</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *clarissimus* and *jucundissimus* (162)?

<sup>10</sup> See 188.

<sup>11</sup> See Rule I.

<sup>12</sup> *Nōne*. See 346 II. 1.



## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

205. Amo, *I love.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
amō,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I love, am loving, do love.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
amō,	<i>I love,</i>	amāmus,	<i>we love,</i>
amās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>	amātis,	<i>you love,</i>
amāt,	<i>he loves ;</i>	amant,	<i>they love.</i>

## IMPERFECT.

*I loved, was loving, did love.*

amābam,	<i>I was loving,</i>	amābāmus,	<i>we were loving,</i>
amābas,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>	amābātis,	<i>you were loving,</i>
amābat,	<i>he was loving ;</i>	amābant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will love.*

amābō,	<i>I shall love,</i>	amābimūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
amābis,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>	amābitis,	<i>you will love,</i>
amābit,	<i>he will love ;</i>	amābunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

## PERFECT.

*I loved, have loved.*

amāvī,	<i>I have loved,</i>	amāvīmus,	<i>we have loved,</i>
amāvisti,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>	amāvistis,	<i>you have loved,</i>
amāvīt,	<i>he has loved ;</i>	amāvērunt, ērē,	<i>they have loved.</i>

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had loved.*

amāverāam,	<i>I had loved,</i>	amāverāmus,	<i>we had loved,</i>
amāverās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>	amāverātis,	<i>you had loved,</i>
amāverāt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>	amāverant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have loved.*

amāverō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>	amāverīmus,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
amāverīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>	amāveritis,	<i>you will have loved,</i>
amāverīt,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>	amāverint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can love.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<b>āmēma,</b>	<i>I may love,</i>	<b>āmēmāus,</b>	<i>we may love,</i>
<b>āmēs,</b>	<i>thou mayst love,</i>	<b>āmētis,</b>	<i>you may love,</i>
<b>āmētī,</b>	<i>he may love ;</i>	<b>āment,</b>	<i>they may love.</i>

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should love.*

<b>āmārēma,</b>	<i>I might love,</i>	<b>āmārēmāus,</b>	<i>we might love,</i>
<b>āmārēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst love,</i>	<b>āmārētis,</b>	<i>you might love,</i>
<b>āmārētī,</b>	<i>he might love ;</i>	<b>āmārent,</b>	<i>they might love.</i>

PERFECT.

*I may or can have loved.*

<b>āmāvērīm,</b>	<i>I may have loved,</i>	<b>āmāvērīmāus,</b>	<i>we may have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvērīs,</b>	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>	<b>āmāvērītis,</b>	<i>you may have loved,</i>
<b>āmāvērītī,</b>	<i>he may have loved ;</i>	<b>āmāvērīnt,</b>	<i>they may have loved.</i>

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have loved.*

<b>āmāviſſēm,</b>	<i>I might have loved,</i>	<b>āmāviſſēmāus,</b>	<i>we might have loved,</i>
<b>āmāviſſēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst have loved,</i>	<b>āmāviſſētis,</b>	<i>you might have loved,</i>
<b>āmāviſſētī,</b>	<i>he might have loved ;</i>	<b>āmāviſſēnt,</b>	<i>they might have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<b>PRES. āmā,</b>	<i>love thou ;</i>	<b>āmātē,</b>	<i>love ye.</i>
<b>FUT. āmātō,</b>	<i>thou shalt love,</i>	<b>āmātōtē,</b>	<i>ye shall love,</i>
<b>āmātō,</b>	<i>he shall love ;</i>	<b>āmantō,</b>	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<b>PRES. āmārē,</b>	<i>to love.</i>
<b>PERF. āmāviſſē,</b>	<i>to have loved.</i>
<b>FUT. āmātūrūs<sup>1</sup> eſſē,</b>	<i>to be about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLE.

<b>PRES. āmans,<sup>2</sup></b>	<i>loving.</i>
<b>FUT. āmātūrūs,<sup>1</sup></b>	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

<b>Gen. āmandī,</b>	<i>of loving,</i>
<b>Dat. āmandō,</b>	<i>for loving,</i>
<b>Acc. āmandūm,</b>	<i>loving,</i>
<b>Abl. āmandō,</b>	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

<b>Acc. āmātūm,</b>	<i>to love,</i>
<b>Abl. āmātū,</b>	<i>to love, be loved.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Decline like *bonus*, 148.

<sup>2</sup> Decline like *prudens*, 153.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

206. Amor, *I am loved.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
ămōr,	ămārī,	ămătūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămōr	ămămūr
ămāris, or rē	ămămīni
ămătūr;	ămantūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was loved.*

ămābār	ămābămūr
ămābāris, or rē	ămābămīni
ămābătūr;	ămābantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be loved.*

ămābōr	ămābīmūr
ămābōris, or rē	ămābīmīni
ămābītūr;	ămābuntūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was loved.*

ămătūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	ămătī sūmūs
ămătūs ēs	ămătī estīs
ămătūs est;	ămătī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been loved.*

ămătūs ērām <sup>1</sup>	ămătī ērāmūs
ămătūs ērās	ămătī ērātīs
ămătūs ērāt;	ămătī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been loved.*

ămătūs ērō <sup>1</sup>	ămătī ērimūs
ămătūs ēris	ămătī ēritīs
ămătūs ērit;	ămătī ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> *Fui, fuisti, etc.*, are sometimes used for *sum, es, etc.*; thus *amātus fui* for *amātus sum*. So *fuēram, fuēras, etc.*, for *ēram, ēras, etc.*; also *fuēro, fuēris, etc.*, for *ēro, ēris, etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be loved.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
ămēr	ămēmār
ămērīs, or rē	ămēmīni
ămētūr;	ămentūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be loved.*

ămārēr	ămārēmār
ămārērīs, or rē	ămārēmīni
ămārētūr;	ămārentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been loved.*

ămătūs sīm <sup>1</sup>	ămătī sīmūs
ămătūs sis	ămătī sīs
ămătūs sīt;	ămătī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been loved.*

ămătūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	ămătī essēmūs
ămătūs essēs	ămătī essētīs
ămătūs essēt;	ămătī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. ămārē, be thou loved;	ămāmīni, be ye loved.
FUT. ămătōr, thou shalt be loved, ămătōr, he shall be loved;	ămantōr, they shall be loved.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES ămārī, to be loved.	
PERF. ămătūs essē, to have been loved.	PERF. ămătūs, having been loved.
FUT. ămătām irī, to be about to be loved.	FUT. ămandūs, to be loved.

<sup>1</sup> *Fuērīn, fuērīs, etc., are sometimes used for sīm, sis, etc. So also fuīssēm, fuīssēs, etc., for essēm, essēs, etc.*

## MODELS FOR PARSING REGULAR VERBS.

1. *With Subject.*

Vos laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

*Laudavistis* is a transitive verb (192, 193) of the First Conjugation (201), from *laudo*; STEM, *laud*. Principal Parts: *laudo, laudāre, laudāvi, laudātum*. Inflection of Tense: *laudāvi, laudavisti, laudāvit, laudavimus, laudavistis, laudaverunt, or laudavere*. The form *laudavistis* is found in the Active voice, Indicative mood, Perfect tense, Second person, Plural number, and agrees with its subject *vos*, according to Rule XXXV.: "A Finite Verb agrees with its Subject in NUMBER and PERSON."

2. *Without Subject.*

Laudāvistis, *You have praised.*

This is parsed like *laudavistis*, above, except that it agrees with *vos*, implied in the ending *istis*; while *laudavistis*, above, agrees with *vos* expressed.

## FIRST CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Vitūpērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,      to blame.  
Laudō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,      to praise.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Amo, amābam, amābo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Amas, amābas, amābis.  
3. Amat, amant.<sup>1</sup> 4. Amābat, amābant. 5. Amābit, amā-

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe in what they are *alike*, and in what they are *unlike*. Thus *amo, amābam, amābo*, have the letters *am*

bunt.<sup>1</sup> 6. Amāmus, amabāmus, amabīmus. 7. Amāvi, amavēram, amavēro. 8. Amāvit, amavērat, amavērit. 9. Amāvi, amavimus. 10. Amavēram, amāverāmus. 11. Amavēro, amaverimus. 12. Amem, amārem, amavērim, amavissem. 13. Amēmus, amarēmus, amaverimus, amāvissēmus. 14. Amet, ament. 15. Amāret, amārent. 16. Amavērit, amavērint. 17. Amavisset, amavissent. 18. Ama, amāte, amatōte. 19. Amāto, amanto.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I praise, I was praising, I will praise. 2. He praises, they praise. 3. He will praise, they will praise. 4. He was praising, they were praising. 5. You were praising, you will praise, you praise. 6. He has loved, he had loved, he will have loved. 7. I have praised, I had praised, I shall have praised. 8. He may love, they may love. 9. Let him praise, let them praise. 10. He would blame, they would blame. 11. I should have praised, we should have praised. 12. Praise thou, praise ye.

## FIRST CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### EXERCISE XXI.

#### I. *Translate into English.*

1. Amor, amābar, amābor. 2. Amāris, amabāris, amaberis. 3. Amātur, amantur. 4. Amabātur, amabantur.

(the stem, 203) in common; but they differ from each other in the endings, — *o*, *ābam*, *ābo*. In the forms *amat*, *amant*, there is a still closer resemblance: not only is the stem *am* common to both, but the endings have the letters *at* in common; or, in other words, the plural ending *ant* differs from the singular ending *at* only in inserting *n*: *AT*, *ANT*.

<sup>1</sup> Here the pupil will observe that the plural ending *ābunt* differs from the singular ending *ābit*, not only in inserting *n* before *t*, but also in changing *i* into *u*: *ABIT*, *ABUNT*.

5. Amabĭtur, amabuntur. 6. Amāmur, amabāmur, amabĭmur. 7. Amātus<sup>1</sup> sum, amātus eram, amātus ero. 8. Amā-tus es, amātus eras, amātus eris. 9. Amātus est, amāti<sup>1</sup> sunt. 10. Amātus erat, amāti erant. 11. Amātus erit, amāti erunt. 12. Amer, amārer, amātus sim, amātus essem. 13. Amēmur, amarēmur, amāti simus, amāti essemus. 14. Amētur, amentur. 15. Amarētur, amarentur. 16. Amā-tus sit, amāti sint. 17. Amātus esset, amāti essent. 18. Amātor, amantor.

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is praised, they are praised. 2. He was praised, they were praised. 3. He will be praised, they will be praised. 4. I am blamed, I was blamed, I shall be blamed. 5. You are loved, you are praised. 6. You were loved, you were praised. 7. You will be loved, you will be praised. 8. I have been blamed, you have been praised. 9. I had been blamed, you had been praised. 10. I shall have been blamed, you will have been praised. 11. You may be blamed, you might be blamed. 12. He would have been blamed, they would have been praised. 13. Let him be praised, let them be praised. 14. Be thou praised, be ye praised.

---

<sup>1</sup> The learner will observe, that, when the verb and the subject (expressed or implied) are in the Singular, the participle (*amātus*), which forms one element of the verb, is also in the Singular; and that, when the verb and the subject are in the Plural, the participle (*amāti*) is also in the Plural.

The form of the participle also varies with the *gender* of the subject, as well as with its *number*. Thus, if the subject is Masculine, the participle will be *amātus* in the Singular, and *amāti* in the Plural; if Feminine, *amāta* in the Singular, and *amātas* in the Plural; and, if Neuter, *amātum* in the Singular, and *amāta* in the Plural. Thus the participle in the compound tenses (i.e., in those which are made up of the participle and the auxiliary *sum*) agrees with the subject in *gender*, *number*, and *case*, like an adjective, according to Rule XXXV. 1, note.

FIRST CONJUGATION—BOTH VOICES.

EXERCISE XXII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Laudo, laudor.<sup>1</sup> 2. Laudābo, laudābor.<sup>2</sup> 3. Laudābam, laudābar.<sup>2</sup> 4. Laudem, lauder. 5. Laudārem, laudārer.<sup>2</sup> 6. Laudat, laudatur.<sup>1</sup> 7. Amābat, amabātur. 8. Amābit, amabītur. 9. Amet, amētur. 10. Amāret, amarētur. 11. Laudārent, laudarentur. 12. Ament, amentur. 13. Laudant, laudantur. 14. Amābant, amabantur. 15. Laudābunt, laudabuntur. 16. Amāvit, amātus est. 17. Laudavērat, laudātus erat. 18. Amavērit, amātus erit. 19. Lauda, laudāre. 20. Amāto, amātor. 21. Laudanto, laudantor.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He blames, he is blamed. 2. I was praising, I was praised. 3. You will praise, you will be praised. 4. He

---

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Voices,—the Active and the Passive,—and observe the difference between them. The Passive *laudor* differs from the Active *laudo* only in adding *r*; the Passive *laudābar* differs from the Active *laudābam* only in taking *r* in place of *m*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the first person of the Passive is formed from the first person of the Active by simply adding *r*; or, if the Active ends in *m*, by substituting *r* for *m*. Again: the Passive *laudātur* differs from the Active *laudat* only in adding *ur*. Thus we find, that, in the Indicative and in the Subjunctive, the third person of the Passive is formed from the third person of the Active by simply adding *ur*.

<sup>2</sup> Where must we look to find the meaning of these endings,—in the Vocabulary, or in the Grammar? and where to find the general meaning of the verb? See Suggestion II. To find the meaning of the verb to which *laudābor* belongs, for what form must we look in the Vocabulary? See Suggestion VII.



will blame, he will be blamed. 5. They will praise, they will be praised. 6. We blame, we are blamed. 7. He has praised, he has been praised. 8. They have blamed, they have been blamed. 9. He had praised, he had been praised. 10. They had blamed, they had been blamed. 11. He may praise, he may be praised. 12. He would blame, he would be blamed. 13. They may praise, they may be praised.

# FIRST CONJUGATION — FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.<sup>1</sup>

## DIRECT OBJECT.

### RULE V. — Direct Object.

379. The Direct Object<sup>2</sup> of an action is put in the Accusative.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*<sup>3</sup> Cic. Libēra rem publicam, *Free the republic.* Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni sālūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people.* Cic.

<sup>1</sup> It is thought advisable that the pupil should now commence a review of the grammatical forms which he has already learned. Accordingly, this Exercise will involve nouns of the First and of the Second Declension. The pupil should therefore carefully review those Declensions (42, 45). In connection with the subsequent Exercises, it is expected that the other Declensions and the other Grammatical forms will be reviewed in order, as will be indicated in the respective headings which precede the several Exercises.

<sup>2</sup> The *Direct Object* of an action is generally the *object*, person, or thing, on which the action is *directly* exerted; as, *sālūtem*, safety, in the third example; *defend* (what?) *the safety*. But the *Direct Object* is sometimes the *effect* of the action, i.e. the object produced by it; as, *mundum*, world, in the first example, — *made the world*.

<sup>3</sup> In English, the object follows the verb; thus, in this example, *world* follows *made*; but in Latin the object usually precedes the verb: thus *mundum* precedes *aedificāvit*. So also, in the third example, *sālūtem* precedes *dēfendite*; but sometimes the object follows the verb: thus in the second example, *rem publicam* follows *libēra*.

MODEL FOR PARSING DIRECT OBJECTS.

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world.*

*Mundum* is a noun (31) of the Second Declension, as it has *i* in the Genitive Singular (40); STEM, *mund*. Singular: *mundus*, *mundi*, *modo*, *mundum*, *monde*, *modo*. Plural: *mundi*, *mundorum*, *mundis*, *mundos*, *mundi*, *mundis*. It is of the Masculine gender, by 45; is in the Accusative Singular; and is the Direct Object of the transitive verb *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.: "The Direct Object of an action is put in the Accusative."

EXERCISE XXIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aedificō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to build.</i>
Arō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to plough.</i>
Cantō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to sing.</i>
Italiā, ae, f.	<i>Italy.</i>
Libērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to liberate.</i>
Rēnōvō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to renew.</i>
Spērō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to hope.</i>
Tarquīniūs, ii, m.	<i>Tarquinius, Roman king.</i>
Thēmistōclēs, is, m.	<i>Themistocles, Athenian commander.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Lusciniā laudo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Lusciniā laudāmus. 3. Lusciniā laudat. 4. Lusciniā laudant. 5. Lusciniā laudatur. 6. Lusciniā laudantur. 7. Patriā amāmus. 8. Pro patriā<sup>2</sup> pugnābimus. 9. Nonne<sup>3</sup> Themistōcles patriā liberāvit? 10. Patriā liberāvit. 11. Italiā liberāverunt. 12. Italiā liberāta<sup>4</sup> est. 13. Tarquinius templum aedificā-

<sup>1</sup> *Lusciniā* is the Direct Object of *laudo*, according to Rule V.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII. page 24.

<sup>3</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>4</sup> For agreement of participle with subject, see Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

vit. 14. Templum aedificābat. 15. Tempa aedificavērant. 16. Tempa aedificāta erant. 17. Templum aedificātum erit. 18. Puērū laudabāmus. 19. Puēri laudāti sunt. 20. Nonne<sup>1</sup> bellum renovātum est?

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The nightingale is singing. 2. The nightingales are singing. 3. The nightingales will sing. 4. The boys have been praised. 5. Did you not<sup>1</sup> praise the boys?<sup>2</sup> 6. We praised the boys. 7. The boys will be praised. 8. Have we not<sup>1</sup> liberated Italy? 9. You have liberated Italy. 10. We will liberate the country. 11. We were ploughing the field. 12. Will you plough the field? 13. The field will be ploughed.

## / FIRST CONJUGATION—THIRD DECLENSION.<sup>3</sup>

### ADVERBS.

### RULE II.—Use of Adverbs.

582. Adverbs<sup>4</sup> qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS:

Sāpientes feliciter<sup>4</sup> vivunt, *The wise live happily*. Cic. Facile<sup>4</sup> doctissimus, *unquestionably the most learned*. Cic. Haud<sup>4</sup> aliter, *not otherwise*. Virg.

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin word for *boys* in this sentence will be in the Accusative, according to Rule V., and will precede the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil should now review the Third Declension (48-54).

<sup>4</sup> The Adverb is, therefore, the part of speech which is used to qualify verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs. *Feliciter*, happily, is an adverb qualifying the verb *vivunt*, live (live *happily*). *Facile*, easily, unquestionably, is an adverb qualifying the adjective *doctissimus*, the most learned (*easily*, i.e. *unquestionably* the most learned). *Haud*, not, is an adverb qualifying the adverb *aliter*, otherwise (*not otherwise*). The adverb in Latin usually stands directly before the word which it qualifies, as in these examples.

MODEL FOR PARSING ADVERBS.

Săpientēs felicitēr vivunt, *The wise live happily.*

*Felicitēr* is an adverb, and qualifies *vivunt*, according to Rule LL:  
 “Adverbs qualify VERBS, ADJECTIVES, and other ADVERBS.”

EXERCISE XXIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Elōquentiā, ae, f.	<i>eloquence.</i>
Expugnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to take, take by storm.</i>
Fortitēr, adv.	<i>bravely.</i>
Jūventūs, jūventūtis, f.	<i>youth.</i>
Ornō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to adorn, be an ornament to.</i>
Piētās, piētātis, f.	<i>filial affection, piety, duty.</i>
Pugnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Servō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to preserve, keep, save.</i>
Völō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fly.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Avis volat. 2. Aves volant. 3. Nonne<sup>1</sup> avis cantābat? 4. Aves cantābant. 5. Rēx urbem<sup>2</sup> aedificāvit. 6. Urbs aedificāta<sup>3</sup> est. 7. Urbes aedificātae<sup>3</sup> erunt. 8. Milītes fortitēr<sup>4</sup> pugnāverunt. 9. Scipio<sup>5</sup> milītes laudāvit. 10. Scipio<sup>5</sup> militum virtūtem laudābat. 11. Scipionem laudāmus. 12. Scipio patrem servāvit. 13. Scipio urbem expugnāvit. 14. Urbs expugnāta est. 15. Milītes patriam amant. 16. Milītes<sup>5</sup> pro patriā pugnābant. 17. Piētās puēros ornat. 18. Virtūtes civitātem ornant.

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> *Urbem*, direct object of *aedificāvit*, according to Rule V.

<sup>3</sup> Why *aedificāta* in one case, and *aedificātae* in the other? Why not *aedificātus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, page 54.

<sup>4</sup> *Fortitēr*, an Adverb qualifying *pugnāverunt*, according to Rule LL.

<sup>5</sup> In what order will you look out the words in this sentence? See Suggestion V.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The birds are singing. 2. Do you not<sup>1</sup> love birds?<sup>2</sup>  
 3. We love birds.<sup>3</sup> 4. This bird will fly. 5. Did you not<sup>1</sup>  
 save the city? 6. The soldiers saved the city. 7. Shep-  
 herds love the mountains. 8. We love virtue. 9. Is not  
 virtue loved? 10. It is loved. 11. Do not the citizens  
 praise the king? 12. They praise the king. 13. The king  
 will be praised. 14. The virtue of the king is praised.

FIRST CONJUGATION — FOURTH AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.<sup>3</sup>

## EXERCISE XXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Convōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to assemble, call together.</i>
Duplicō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to double, increase.</i>
Dux, dūcis, m.	<i>general, leader.</i>
Fidēs, fidēi, f.	<i>faith, fidelity, word,<sup>4</sup> promise.</i>
Fūgō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to rout.</i>
Hōmō, hōmīnis, m.	<i>man.</i>
Sēnātūs, ūs, m.	<i>senate.</i>
Stimulō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to stimulate.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Homīnes<sup>5</sup> cantum lusciniæ<sup>6</sup> laudant. 2. Cantus lus-  
 ciniæ laudātur. 3. Romūlus exercitum fugat. 4. Nonne

<sup>1</sup> See 346, II. 1, page 59.

<sup>2</sup> Remember that the *object* in Latin usually precedes the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil should now review these Declensions (116, 119).

<sup>4</sup> To keep one's word, *fidem servāre*: I keep my word, *fidem meam servo*, or *fidem servo*, as the Latin possessives, *meus*, my, *tuus*, your, etc., when not emphatic, are often omitted; when expressed, they usually follow their nouns.

<sup>5</sup> In this sentence, what order will you follow, in accordance with Suggestion V., in looking out the words in the Vocabulary? In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what forms will you look in the Vocabulary to find the meaning of *homīnes* (51, II.), *mīlites* (50, II.), *stimulavit* (205)?

<sup>6</sup> See Rule XVI. page 22.

exercitum fugavimus? 5. Exercitus fugatus est. 6. Exercitus fugatus erit. 7. Consul senatum convocavit. 8. Senatus convocatus est. 9. Senatus consulem laudavit. 10. Spes victoriae milites stimulavit. 11. Numerum dierum duplicavi. 12. Numerus dierum duplicatus est.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The boy has kept his word.<sup>1</sup> 2. Will you not keep your word? 3. We will keep our word. 4. The consul praised the fidelity of the citizens. 5. Will not the fidelity of the citizens be praised? 6. Will not the citizens praise the fidelity of the army? 7. They have praised the fidelity of the army. 8. Did not the general praise the army? 9. He praised the army. 10. The army will be praised.

## FIRST CONJUGATION — ADJECTIVES.<sup>2</sup>

### EXERCISE XXVI.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Ampliō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to enlarge.</i>
Condemnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to condemn.</i>
Hannibāl, Hannibālis, m.	<i>Hannibal, Carthaginian general.</i>
Innocens, innocentis,	<i>innocent.</i>
Nobilis, ē,	<i>noble.</i>
Nōvūs, ū, ūm,	<i>new.</i>
Occūpō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to occupy.</i>
Pūnicūs, ū, ūm,	<i>Carthaginian, Punic.</i>

<sup>1</sup> See note 4, preceding page.

<sup>2</sup> The pupil should now review Adjectives (146-162).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rex urbem novam<sup>1</sup> ampliābat. 2. Urbem novam ampliābunt. 3. Rex urbem pulchram<sup>1</sup> ampliavērat. 4. Urbs pulchra servāta<sup>2</sup> est. 5. Hannībal multas civitatēs occupāvit. 6. Judīces homīnem innocentissimum<sup>3</sup> condemnāvērunt. 7. Num Punicum bellum renovātum est? 8. Nonne Punicum bellum renovātum est? 9. Punicum bellum renovātum est. 10. Romāni nobilissimas<sup>4</sup> urbes expugnāvērunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the brave soldiers save the city? 2. The brave soldiers will save the beautiful city. 3. The noble city will be saved. 4. We praise good boys. 5. Good boys will be praised. 6. Do you not praise diligent pupils? 7. Diligent pupils are praised. 8. The citizens praise the brave soldiers.

FIRST CONJUGATION—PRONOUNS.<sup>4</sup>

## EXERCISE XXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Aliquis, aliquā, aliquid or aliquod,	some one, somebody.
Dēlectō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to delight.
Diligentiā, ae, f.	diligence.
Nōn, adv.	not.
Sālūtō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	to salute.
Suūs, ū, ūm,	his, her, its, their. /

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>2</sup> Why *servāta* rather than *servātus*? See Rule XXXV. 460, 1, p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII., for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 162.

<sup>4</sup> The pupil should now review Pronouns (182–191).

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Quis hanc<sup>1</sup> urbem. servābit? 2. Hanc urbem pulchram servabimus. 3. Quis te<sup>2</sup> salutāvit? 4. Pater meus<sup>1</sup> te salutāt. 5. Hęc<sup>1</sup> vīta tē delectat. 6. Philosophia nos<sup>2</sup> delectat. 7. Omnia animalia se<sup>2</sup> amant. 8. Fratres tui<sup>1</sup> laudantur. 9. Fratres mei laudāti sunt. 10. Puer parentes suos<sup>3</sup> amat. 11. Puēri boni parentes suos<sup>3</sup> amant. 12. Parentes nostros amāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you blame me? 2. We do not<sup>4</sup> blame you. 3. Whom do you blame? 4. We blāme your brother. 5. This book delights me. 6. These books delighted us. 7. Did not<sup>5</sup> your father praise you? 8. He praised us. 9. Did not<sup>5</sup> some one praise your diligence? 10. Our parents praised our diligence. 11. Did your brother blame you? 12. He did not<sup>4</sup> blame me. 13. He blamed himself. 14. He will be blamed.

<sup>1</sup> These Pronouns are all used as adjectives, and agree with their nouns like any other adjectives, according to Rule XXXIII. p. 32. Pronouns thus used as adjectives generally precede their nouns; but the Possessive Pronouns, *meus, tuus*, etc. (185), generally follow their nouns, as in this Exercise.

<sup>2</sup> Personal Pronouns, it will be remembered, are used as substantives (184). They are accordingly governed like any other substantives. See Rule V. p. 70. Observe that the object precedes the verb.

<sup>3</sup> The pupil will observe that *suos* in the tenth sentence must be rendered *his*, while in the eleventh it must be rendered *their*. Thus the meaning of the Possessive *suus* depends in part upon the *number* of the word to which it refers. It must be rendered *his* (*her, its*) when that word, as *puer* in the tenth sentence, is in the *Singular*; but it must be rendered *their* when that word, as *puēri* in the eleventh sentence, is in the *Plural*.

<sup>4</sup> When a verb with a direct object has also an adverb qualifying it, the usual order is *Object, Adverb, Verb*; but the adverb *non*, not, may stand either *before* or *after* the object.

<sup>5</sup> Nonne.



## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

207. Moneo, *I advise.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
mōneō,	mōnērē,	mōnuī,	mōnitūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I advise.*

## SINGULAR.

mōneō  
mōnēs  
mōnēt;

## PLURAL.

mōnēmūs  
mōnētis  
mōnent.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advising.*

mōnebām  
mōnebās  
mōnebāt;

mōnebāmūs  
mōnebātis  
mōnebant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will advise.*

mōnebō  
mōnebis  
mōnebit;

mōnebimūs  
mōnebitis  
mōnebunt.

## PERFECT.

*I advised or have advised.*

mōnuī  
mōnuisti  
mōnuīt;

mōnuimūs  
mōnuistis  
mōnuērunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had advised.*

mōnuērām  
mōnuērās  
mōnuērāt;

mōnuērāmūs  
mōnuērātis  
mōnuērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have advised.*

mōnuērō  
mōnuēris  
mōnuērit;

mōnuērīmūs  
mōnuēritis  
mōnuērint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can advise.*

SINGULAR.

mōneām  
mōneās  
mōneāt;

PLURAL.

mōneāmūs  
mōneātīs  
mōneant.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

mōnērēm  
mōnērēs  
mōnērēt;

mōnērēmūs  
mōnērētīs  
mōnērent.

PERFECT.

*I may have advised.*

mōnuērīm  
mōnuērīs  
mōnuērīt;

mōnuērīmūs  
mōnuērītīs  
mōnuērīnt.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

mōnuissēm  
mōnuissēs  
mōnuissēt;

mōnuissēmūs  
mōnuissētīs  
mōnuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnē,	advise thou;		mōnētē,	advise ye.
FUT. mōnētō,	thou shalt advise,		mōnētētē,	ye shall advise,
	mōnētō,		mōnentō,	they shall advise

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnērē,	to advise.		PRES. mōnens,	advising.
PERF. mōnuissē,	to have advised.			
FUT. mōnītūrū	essē, to be		FUT. mōnītūrū,	about to advise.
	about to advise.			

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. mōnendī,	of advising,			
Dat. mōnendō,	for advising,			
Acc. mōnendū,	advising,		Acc. mōnītū,	to advise,
Abl. mōnendō,	by advising.		Abl. mōnītū,	to advise, be advised.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

208. Moneor, *I am advised.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
mōneōr,	mōnēri,	mōnītūs sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōneōr	mōnēmūr
mōnēris, or rē	mōnēmīni
mōnētūr;	mōnentūr.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was advised.*

mōnebār	mōnebāmūr
mōnebāris, or rē	mōnebāmīni
mōnebātūr;	mōnebantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be advised.*

mōnebōr	mōnebīmūr
mōnebēris, or rē	mōnebīmīni
mōnebitūr;	mōnebuntūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was advised.*

mōnītūs sūm <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī sūmūs
mōnītūs es	mōnītī estīs
mōnītūs est;	mōnītī sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been advised.*

mōnītūs ērām <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī ērāmus
mōnītūs ērās	mōnītī ērātīs
mōnītūs ērāt;	mōnītī ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been advised.*

mōnītūs ērō <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī ērīmūs
mōnītūs ēris	mōnītī ēritīs
mōnītūs ērit;	mōnītī ērunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be advised.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
mōnēār	mōnēāmūr
mōnēāris, or rē	mōnēāmini
mōnēātūr;	mōnēantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

mōnērēr	mōnērēmūr
mōnērēris, or rē	mōnērēmini
mōnērētūr;	mōnērēntūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been advised.*

mōnītūs sim <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī simūs
mōnītūs sis	mōnītī sitis
mōnītūs sit;	mōnītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

mōnītūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	mōnītī essēmūs
mōnītūs essēs	mōnītī essētis
mōnītūs essēt;	mōnītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. mōnērē, be thou advised;	mōnēmini, be ye advised.
FUT. mōnētōr, thou shalt be advised,	
mōnētōr, he shall be advised;	mōnentōr, they shall be advised.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. mōnēri, to be advised,	
PERF. mōnītūs esse, to have been advised,	PERF. mōnītūs, advised,
FUT. mōnītūm iri, to be about to be advised.	FUT. mōnendūs, to be advised.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXVIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Mōneĉ, mōnērĉ, mōnui, mōnītŭm,	<i>to advise.</i>
Pāreĉ, pārĉrĉ, pārui, pārītŭm,	<i>to obey.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneo, monēbam, monēbo.<sup>1</sup> 2. Mones, monētis. 3. Monet, monent. 4. Monēmus, monebāmus, monebīmus. 5. Monēbant, monēbunt. 6. Monui, monuēram, monuēro. 7. Monuīmus, monuerāmus, monuerīmus. 8. Monuit, monuērunt. 9. Monuērat, monuērant. 10. Monuērit, monuērint. 11. Moneam, monērem, monuērim, monuissēm. 12. Moneat, moneant. 13. Monēret, monērent. 14. Monuērit, monuērint. 15. Monuisset, monuissent.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. You advise, you were advising, you will advise. 2. He obeys, they obey. 3. He was obeying, they were obeying. 4. He will advise, they will advise. 5. He has obeyed, he had obeyed, he will have obeyed. 6. They have advised, they had advised, they will have advised. 7. I have advised, we have advised. 8. I had advised, I had obeyed. 9. He may advise, he may obey.

---

<sup>1</sup> The pupil should carefully compare the forms grouped together under the several numerals, and observe wherein they differ from each other.

FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—ACTIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXIX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Cantō, ūrē, āvī, ātūm,</i>	<i>to sing.</i>
<i>Spērō, ārē, āvī. ātūm,</i>	<i>to hope.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Sperat, paret.*<sup>1</sup> 2. *Sperant, parent.* 3. *Sperāmus, parēmus.* 4. *Sperābat, parēbat.* 5. *Sperābant, parēbant.* 6. *Sperābam, parēbam.* 7. *Sperabāmus, parebāmus.* 8. *Sperabīmus, parebīmus.* 9. *Sperābo, parēbo.* 10. *Sperāvi, parui.* 11. *Speravēram, paruēram.* 12. *Speravēro, paruēro.* 13. *Speravīmus, paruīmus.* 14. *Speravērat, paruērat.* 15. *Speravērint, paruērint.* 16. *Sperāte, parēte.*

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I sing, I advise. 2. I was singing, I was advising. 3. I will sing, I will advise. 4. He will hope, he will obey. 5. They will hope, they will obey. 6. They were singing, they were advising. 7. They sing, they advise. 8. He has hoped, he has obeyed. 9. They have hoped, they have obeyed. 10. He had sung, he had obeyed. 11. They had sung, they had obeyed. 12. We had hoped, we had advised. 13. We would sing, we would obey.

---

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the two Conjugations,—the First and the Second,—and should carefully observe the difference between them.

## SECOND CONJUGATION — ACTIVE VOICE.

## OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XXX.

## I. Vocabulary.

Aurūm, i, n.	gold.
Flōs, flōris, m.	flower.
Hābeō, hābēre, hābui, hābitūm,	to have, hold.
Mēreō, mērere, mēui, mēritūm,	to deserve, merit.
Philōsōphūs, i, m.	philosopher.
Pondūs, pondēris, n.	weight, mass.
Præbeō, præbēre, præbui, præbitūm,•	to furnish, give.
Praemiūm, ii, n.	reward.
Tāceō, tācere, tācui, tācitūm,	to be silent.
Terreō, terrere, terrui, territūm,	to frighten, terrify.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Puēri libros habent. 3. Libros utiles<sup>1</sup> habēmus. 4. Librum utilem habuisti. 5. Nonne bonum<sup>1</sup> amicum habēbis? 6. Bonum amicum habēbo. 7. Bonos amicos habuimus. 8. Rex amicos habēbat. 9. Rex aurum habēbat. 10. Rex<sup>2</sup> magnum auri pondus<sup>3</sup> habuerat. 11. Gloriam veram habebitis. 12. Ver præbet flores. 13. Ver præbēbit flores. 14. Philosophus tacēbat. 15. Discipulus praeonium meret.

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the Latin adjective may either precede or follow its noun; though it seems more frequently to follow, unless it is emphatic.

<sup>2</sup> In this sentence, endeavor, in accordance with Suggestion IV., to discover the *subject*, *verb*, and *object*, before looking out the words in the Vocabulary. In what order will you look out the words in accordance with Suggestion V.?

<sup>3</sup> When a noun is qualified by both an adjective and a genitive, as *pondus* by *magnum* and *auri*, the adjective usually precedes both nouns, and is followed by the genitive, as in this example: *magnum auri pondus*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who has my book? 2. I have your book. 3. Which book have you? 4. I have three<sup>1</sup> books. 5. My brother has ten books. 6. The king had a golden crown. 7. Did he not have many friends? 8. He had many friends. 9. You will have true friends. 10. The pupils are silent.<sup>2</sup> 11. Will you not be silent? 12. We will be silent.

SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Moneor, monēbar, monēbor. 2. Monēmur, monebāmur, monebīmur. 3. Moneātur, moneantur. 4. Moneretur, monerentur. 5. Monītus est, monīti sunt. 6. Monītus erat, monīti erant. 7. Monītus erit, monīti erunt. 8. Monētor, monentor. 9. Monet, monētur. 10. Monent, monentur. 11. Monēbat, Monebātur. 12. Monēbant, monebantur. 13. Monēbit, monebītur. 14. Monēbunt, monebuntur. 15. Monēmus, monēmur. 16. Monebāmus, Monebāmur. 17. Monebīmus, monebīmur. /

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is advised, they are advised. 2. I was terrified, we were terrified. 3. He will be advised, they will be advised. 4. You have been terrified, I have been terrified. 5. He had been advised, he had been terrified. 6. I shall have been advised, I shall have been terrified. 7. I advise, I am advised. 8. I was advising, I was advised. 9. I shall advise, I shall be advised. 10. They terrify, they are terrified. 11. They were terrifying, they were terrified. 12. They will terrify, they will be terrified.

---

<sup>1</sup> Place the Numeral before the noun.

<sup>2</sup> Are silent is to be rendered by the Latin verb *taceo*.



## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS — PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnuī, admōnītūm,	<i>to admonish.</i>
Amō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to love.</i>
Invitō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to invite.</i>
Laudō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to praise.</i>
Terreō, terrērē, terrui, terrītūm,	<i>to terrify.</i>
Vitūpērō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to blame.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitātur, terrētur. 2. Invitantur, terrentur. 3. Invitāmur, terrēmur. 4. Invitabāmur, terrebāmur. 5. Invitabātur, terrebātur. 6. Invitabantur, terrebantur. 7. Invitabuntur, terrebuntur. 8. Invitabītur, terrebītur. 9. Invitābor, terrēbor. 10. Invitātus sum, terrītus sum. 11. Invitāti sumus, terrīti sumus. 12. Invitātus est, terrītus est. 13. Invitāti sunt, terrīti sunt. 14. Invitāti erant, terrīti erant. 15. Invitātus erat, terrītus erat.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am invited, I am admonished. 2. You are invited, you are admonished. 3. He was praised, he was advised. 4. They were praised, they were advised. 5. You will be invited, you will be admonished. 6. He has been blamed, he has been terrified. 7. They had been loved, they had been admonished. 8. They will have been invited, they

will have been admonished. 9. I may be invited, I may be admonished. 10. I should be invited, I should be admonished.

## SECOND CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

### EXERCISE XXXIII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

<i>Apud, prep. with acc.</i>	<i>near, before, among.</i>
<i>Exerceō, exercērē, exercui, exercitūm,</i>	<i>to exercise, train.</i>
<i>Frāter, frātris, m.</i>	<i>brother.</i>
<i>Māgister, māgistrī, m.</i>	<i>master, teacher.</i>
<i>Mēmōriā, ae, f.</i>	<i>memory.</i>
<i>Puēr, puērī, m.</i>	<i>boy.</i>
<i>Quis, quae, quid,<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>who, which, what?</i>
<i>Rectē, adv.</i>	<i>rightly.</i>
<i>Tuūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>your, yours.</i>

#### II. Translate into English.

1. Quis monētur? 2. Nonne puer monētur? 3. Puer recte monētur. 4. Puēri recte monentur. 5. Discipūli recte monīti sunt. 6. Discipūlus recte monītus est. 7. Frater tuus recte admonītus erit. 8. Fratres tui recte admonīti erunt. 9. Nonne admonīti sumus? 10. Recte admonīti sumus. 11. Memoria exercētur. 12. Memoria

---

<sup>1</sup> For the declension of the Interrogative Pronoun *quis*, see 188.

exerceatur.<sup>1</sup> 13. Memoria exercebĭtur. 14. Discipŭli apud magistros exercentur.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Were not the boys terrified? 2. They were terrified.  
3. Let<sup>2</sup> the pupils be admonished. 4. They have been admonished. 5. Who will be advised? 6. These boys will be advised. 7. Has your memory been exercised? 8. My memory has been exercised. 9. Was not the general terrified? 10. The general himself<sup>3</sup> was not terrified. 11. The soldiers were terrified.

## FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS—MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

### EXERCISE XXXIV.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Cāmillŭs, i, m.	Camillus, Roman general.
Exspectō, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	to await, expect.
Hostis, is, m. and f.	enemy.
Ingens, ingentis,	huge, large, great.
Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, f.	legion, body of soldiers.
Nōn, adv.	not.
Nŭmērŭs, i, m.	number.
Optō, āre, āvi, ātŭm,	to wish for, desire.
Pēcŭniā, ae, f.	money.

<sup>1</sup> *Exerceatur*; the Subjunctive is sometimes best rendered by *let*. See 196, I. 2.

<sup>2</sup> *Let be admonished* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

<sup>3</sup> *Himself* = *ipse*. See 186.

Philōsōphūs, i, m.	<i>philosopher.</i>
Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m.	<i>teacher.</i>
Proeliū, ii, n.	<i>battle.</i>
Rōmānūs, i, m.	<i>Roman, a Roman.</i>
Sūpērō, āre, āvi, ūtūm,	<i>to conquer.</i>
Vērēcundiā, ae, f.	<i>modesty.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Camillus hostes superāvit. 2. Hostes superāti sunt.  
 3. Omnes discipūli paruērānt.<sup>1</sup> 4. Romāni hostem expectā-  
 bant. 5. Romāni<sup>2</sup> ingentem hostium numērum<sup>3</sup> expecta-  
 vērant.<sup>4</sup> 6. Hostes proeliū expectābant. 7. Praeceptor  
 tacēbat. 8. Discipūli tacēbant. 9. Verecundia iuventūtem  
 ornat. 10. Philōsōphus pecuniam non habet. 11. Philos-  
 ōphi pecuniam non optant.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are you expecting me? 2. We are expecting you.  
 3. Did you not await the enemy?<sup>4</sup> 4. We awaited the  
 enemy. 5. Have you not a good memory? 6. I have a  
 good memory. 7. Will the soldiers obey? 8. The brave  
 soldiers will obey. 9. Camillus had an army. 10. He  
 praised the army. 11. Did you advise the boy? 12. We  
 advised the boys. 13. Were not the enemy put to flight?<sup>5</sup>  
 14. They were put to flight.

<sup>1</sup> In accordance with Suggestion VII. 3, for what form will you look in the Vocabulary? See 205, 207.

<sup>2</sup> Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

<sup>3</sup> *Ingentem hostium numērum*, for arrangement see note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX.

<sup>4</sup> Put the Latin word in the plural.

<sup>5</sup> *Put to flight* is to be rendered by a single Latin verb.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

209. Rego, *I rule.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
rēgō,	rēgērē,	rexī,	rectūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I rule.*

## SINGULAR.

rēgō  
rēgis  
rēgit ;

## PLURAL.

rēgimūs  
rēgitis  
rēgunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruling.*

rēgebām  
rēgebās  
rēgebāt ;

rēgebāmūs  
rēgebātis  
rēgebant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will rule.*

rēgām  
rēgēs  
rēgēt ;

rēgēmūs  
rēgētis  
rēgent.

## PERFECT.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

rexī  
rexistī  
rexīt ;

reximūs  
rexistis  
rexērunt, or ērē.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had ruled.*

rexērām  
rexērās  
rexērāt ;

rexērāmūs  
rexērātis  
rexērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have ruled.*

rexērō  
rexeris  
rexerit ;

rexerimūs  
rexeritis  
rexerint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can rule.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgām	rēgāmūs
rēgās	rēgātis
rēgāt;	rēgant.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

rēgērēm	rēgērēmūs
rēgērēs	rēgērētis
rēgēret;	rēgērent.

PERFECT.

*I may have ruled.*

rexērīm	rexērīmūs
rexērīs	rexērītis
rexērīt;	rexērint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

rexissēm	rexissēmūs
rexissēs	rexissētis
rexissēt;	rexissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgē, rule thou;	rēgītē, rule ye.
FUT. rēgītō, thou shalt rule, rēgītō, he shall rule;	rēgītōtē, ye shall rule, rēgantō, they shall rule.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, to rule.
PERF. rexissē, to have ruled.
FUT. rectūrus essē, to be about to rule.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgens, ruling.
FUT. rectūrus, about to rule.

GERUND.

Gen. rēgendi, of ruling,
Dat. rēgendō, for ruling,
Acc. rēgendum, ruling,
Abi. rēgendō, by ruling.

SUPINE.

Acc. rectum, to rule,
Abi. rectū, to rule, be ruled.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

210. Regor, *I am ruled.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
regōr,	regī,	rectus sum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
regōr	regimur
regēris, or rē	regimini
regitur;	reguntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was ruled.*

regēbār	regēbāmur
regēbāris, or rē	regēbāmini
regēbātūr;	regēbantūr.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

regār	regemur
regēris, or rē	regimini
regētūr;	regentūr.

## PERFECT.

*I have been or was ruled.*

rectus sum <sup>1</sup>	recti sumus
rectus es	recti estis
rectus est;	recti sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been ruled.*

rectus ēram <sup>1</sup>	recti ēramus
rectus ēras	recti ērātis
rectus ērāt;	recti ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been ruled.*

rectus erō <sup>1</sup>	recti erimus
rectus eris	recti eritis
rectus erit;	recti erunt.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be ruled.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
rēgār	rēgāmūr
rēgāris, or rē	rēgāminī
rēgātūr;	rēgantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

rēgērēr	rēgērēmūr
rēgērōris, or rē	rēgērēmīnī
rēgērētūr;	rēgērentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been ruled.*

rectūs sim <sup>1</sup>	rectī simūs
rectūs sis	rectī sitis
rectūs sit;	rectī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

rectūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	rectī essēmūs
rectūs essēs	rectī essētis
rectūs essēt;	rectī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. rēgērē, be thou ruled;	rēgīmīnī, be ye ruled.
FUT. rēgītōr, thou shalt be ruled, rēgītōr, he shall be ruled;	rēgantōr, ye shall be ruled.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. rēgī, to be ruled.	
PERF. rectūs essē, to have been ruled.	PERF. rectūs, ruled.
FUT. rectūm irī, to be about to be ruled.	FUT. rēgendūs, to be ruled.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.



## THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dūcō, ērē, duxī, ductūm,	<i>to lead.</i>
Rēgō, ērē, rexī, rectūm,	<i>to rule, govern.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Rego, regēbam, regam. 2. Regīmus, regebāmus, regēmus. 3. Regītis, regiā. 4. Regēbas, regebātis. 5. Regēbant, regēbat. 6. Reget, regent. 7. Rexērunt, rexit. 8. Rexi, rexeram, rexero. 9. Rexīmus, rexerāmus, rexerīmus. 10. Regas, regēres, rexeris, rexisses. 11. Regātis, regerētis, rexerītis, rexissētis. 12. Regam, regāmus. 13. Regerēmus, regērem. 14. Rexerit, rexerint. 15. Rexissent, rexisset. 16. Rege, regite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He leads, he was leading, he will lead. 2. He rules, he was ruling, he will rule. 3. They lead, they rule. 4. They were leading, they were ruling. 5. They will lead, they will rule. 6. You have led, you have ruled. 7. He had led, he had ruled. 8. They had led, they had ruled. 9. He will have led, he will have ruled. 10. They may lead, they may rule. 11. He would lead, he would rule. 12. They would lead, they would rule. 13. We should have led, we should have ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—ACTIVE  
VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Dicō, dicēre, dixi, dictum,	to say, tell, speak.
Vocō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to call.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocat, tacet, dicit.<sup>1</sup> 2. Vocant, tacent, dicunt. 3. Vocābant, tacēbant, dicēbant. 4. Vocābo, tacēbo, dicam. 5. Vocāvīmus, tacuīmus, dixīmus. 6. Vocāvi, tacui, dixi. 7. Vocavērunt, tacuērunt, dixerunt. 8. Vocavērat, tacuērat, dixerat. 9. Vocavērint, tacuērint, dixerint. 10. Vocem, taceam, dicam. 11. Vocārent, tacērent, dicērent. 12. Vocāte, tacēte, dicite.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I invite, I admonish, I lead. 2. We call, we are silent, we speak. 3. We were inviting, we were admonishing, we were leading. 4. I shall call, I shall be silent, I shall speak. 5. He has invited, he has been silent, he has led. 6. He had praised, he had obeyed, he had ruled. 7. They had blamed, they had advised, they had spoken. 8. He may call, he may admonish, he may rule.

<sup>1</sup> In this Exercise, the pupil should carefully compare the corresponding forms in the three Conjugations here represented,—the First, the Second, and the Third,—and should carefully observe the difference between them. The advantages of such a course are twofold: first, it teaches the pupil to distinguish the several Conjugations from each other, which is one of the most important lessons to be learned in the study of the language; and, secondly, it tends to form in him, thus early, the habit of close and accurate observation, the habit of marking differences and of tracing resemblances in kindred forms, which is of vital importance in the whole course of classical study.

## THIRD CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE.

## OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

<i>Animūs, i, m.</i>	<i>mind, passion.</i>
<i>Bēnē, adv.</i>	<i>well.</i>
<i>Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, f.</i>	<i>eclipse.</i>
<i>Disertē, adv.</i>	<i>clearly, eloquently.</i>
<i>Edūcō, edūcērē, eduxi, eductū,</i>	<i>to lead forth.</i>
<i>Indicō, indicērē, indixi, indictū,</i>	<i>to declare.</i>
<i>Lātinē, adv.</i>	<i>in Latin.</i>
<i>Praedicō, praedicērē, praedixi, praedictū,</i>	<i>to predict, foretell.</i>
<i>Sāpientēr, adv.</i>	<i>wisely.</i>
<i>Thālēs, is, m.</i>	<i>Thales, a philosopher.</i>
<i>Tullūs, i, m.</i>	<i>Tullus, a Roman name.</i>
<i>Vērū, i, n.</i>	<i>truth.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Bene dixisti. 2. Nonne Cicero in senātu dixērat? 3. Cicero diserte dicēbat. 4. Oratōres diserte dicent. 5. Philosophus sapienter dixit. 6. Philosophi sapienter dixērunt. 7. Oratōres Latine dixērunt. 8. Caesar legiōnes eduxit. 9. Hannībal exercitū in Italiā duxit. 10. Quis bellum indixit? 11. Tullus bellum indixit. 12. Thales defectiōnem solis praedixit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who will speak the truth? 2. Have we not spoken the truth? 3. You have spoken the truth. 4. Will not the general lead forth the army? 5. He has led forth the army. 6. Do you not govern your mind? 7. We govern our minds. 8. Did you predict this war? 9. We did not predict the war. 10. Who has declared war? 11. The Romans have declared war.

THIRD CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Regor, regēbar, regar. 2. Regimur, regebāmur, regēmur. 3. Regar, regāmūr. 4. Regerētur, regerentur. 5. Rectus est, rectus erat, rectus erit. 6. Recti sunt, recti erant, recti erunt. 7. Regit, regitur. 8. Regunt, reguntur. 9. Regēbat, regebātur. 10. Regēbant, regebantur. 11. Reget, regētur. 12. Regent, regentur. 13. Regimus, regimur. 14. Regebāmus, regebāmur. 15. Regāmus, regēmur.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is ruled, they are ruled. 2. I am ruled, I am led. 3. We are ruled, we are led. 4. He was ruled, they were ruled. 5. He will be ruled, they will be ruled. 6. We have been ruled, we have been led. 7. I lead, I am led. 8. We lead, we are led. 9. We were ruling, we were ruled. 10. He was leading, he was led. 11. They may rule, they may be ruled.

FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Vocor, moneor, ducor. 2. Vocāmur, monēmur, ducimur. 3. Vocātur, monētur, ducitur. 4. Vocabātur, monebātur, ducebātur. 5. Vocabantur, monebantur, ducebantur. 6. Vocabuntur, monebuntur, ducentur. 7. Vocā-

tus es, monitus es, ductus es. 8. Vocāti estis, monīti estis, ducti estis. 9. Vocātus eram, monītus eram, ductus eram. 10. Vocātus erit, monītus erit, ductus erit.)

## II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is invited, he is admonished, he is led. 2. We were called, we were advised, we were ruled. 3. He will be called, he will be advised, he will be ruled. 4. He may be invited, he may be admonished, he may be led. 5. He has been called, he has been advised, he has been led. 6. They have been called, they have been advised, they have been led.

## THIRD CONJUGATION — PASSIVE VOICE.

### OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

## EXERCISE XL.

### I. *Vocabulary.*

Mundūs, i, m.	world.
Semper, adv.	always, ever.
Vērūm, i, n.	truth.

### II. *Translate into English.*

1. Mundus regitur. 2. Omnis hic mundus semper rectus est. 3. Hic mundus semper regitur. 4. Haec civitas bene regitur. 5. Hae civitates bene reguntur. 6. Civitates rectae sunt. 7. Anīmus regatur. 8. Exercītus in Italiam ductus est. 9. Multi exercītus in Italiam ducti erant. 10. Bellum indictum<sup>1</sup> erat. 11. Multa bella indicta<sup>1</sup> sunt.

### III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the army led forth? 2. The army was led forth. 3. Has not this state been well governed? 4. This

<sup>1</sup> Why *indictum* in one example, and *indicta* in the other? Why not rather *indictus* in both? See Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

state has been well governed. 5. Will not the truth be spoken? 6. The truth has been spoken. 7. Let<sup>1</sup> the truth always be spoken. 8. Would not war have been declared? 9. War would have been declared.

## FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD CONJUGATIONS—

### MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

#### EXERCISE XLI.

##### I. Vocabulary.

Gallus, i, m.	Gallus, a proper name.
Hirundō, hirundīnis, f.	swallow.
Lūnā, ae, f.	moon.
Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to proclaim, announce.
Sensūs, ūs, m.	feeling, perception.
Supplicium, ii, n.	punishment.

##### II. Translate into English.

1. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiant. 2. Hirundīnes adventum veris nuntiavērant. 3. Discipūli laudabuntur. 4. Gallus defectiones solis praedixit. 5. Defectiones lunae praedixit. 6. Defectiones lunae praedicuntur. 7. Omne animal sensus habet. 8. Puēri tacēbant.

##### III. Translate into Latin.

1. This boy has not observed the law. 2. Good citizens will observe the laws. 3. Let the laws be observed. 4. Who has your book? 5. That boy has my book. 6. You shall have my book. 7. What did you say? 8. I spoke the truth. 9. The truth would have been spoken.

---

<sup>1</sup> Let be spoken, render by the Latin Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

211. Audio, *I hear.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
audiō,	audīre,	audivi,	audītum.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I hear.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō	audimūs
audis	auditis
audit;	audiunt.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was hearing.*

audiebām	audiebāmūs
audiebās	audiebātis
audiebāt;	audiebant.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will hear.*

audiām	audiemūs
audies	audietis
audiet;	audient.

## PERFECT.

*I heard or have heard.*

audivi	audivimūs
audivisti	audivistis
audivit;	audiverunt, or ēre.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had heard.*

audiverām	audiverāmūs
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverāt;	audiverant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have heard.*

audiverō	audiverimūs
audiveris	audiveritis
audiverit;	audiverint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can hear.*

SINGULAR.

audiā<sup>m</sup>  
audiās  
audiāt;

PLURAL.

audiām<sup>us</sup>  
audiātis  
audiant.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

audirē<sup>m</sup>  
audirēs  
audirēt;

audirēm<sup>us</sup>  
audirētis  
audirent.

PERFECT.

*I may have heard.*

audivē<sup>rim</sup>  
audivē<sup>ris</sup>  
audivē<sup>rit</sup>;

audivē<sup>rim<sup>us</sup></sup>  
audivē<sup>ritis</sup>  
audivē<sup>rint</sup>.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

audivissē<sup>m</sup>  
audivissēs  
audivissēt;

audivissēm<sup>us</sup>  
audivissētis  
audivissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audi, hear thou;

auditē, hear ye.

FUT. auditō, thou shalt hear,  
auditō, he shall hear;

auditōtē, ye shall hear,  
audiamtō, they shall hear.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audirē, to hear.

PRES. audiens, hearing.

PERF. audivissē, to have heard.

FUT. auditū<sup>rus</sup> esse, to be  
about to hear.

FUT. auditū<sup>rus</sup>, about to hear.

GERUND.

SUPINE.

Gen. audiend<sup>i</sup>, of hearing.

Dat. audiendō, for hearing.

Acc. audiendū<sup>m</sup>, hearing.

Abl. audiendō, by hearing.

Acc. auditū<sup>m</sup>, to hear.

Abl. auditū, to hear, be heard.



## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

212. Audior, *I am heard.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
audiōr,	audiri,	auditus sūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*I am heard.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiōr.	audiimūr
audiris, or rē	audiimini
auditur;	audiuntur.

## IMPERFECT.

*I was heard.*

audiēbār	audiēbāmūr
audiēbaris, or rē	audiēbamini
audiēbātur;	audiēbantur.

## FUTURE.

*I shall or will be heard.*

audiār	audiēmūr
audiēris, or rē	audiēmini
audiētur;	audiēntur.

## PERFECT.

*I have been heard.*

auditus sūm <sup>1</sup>	auditi sūmūs
auditus es	auditi estis
auditus est;	auditi sunt.

## PLUPERFECT.

*I had been heard.*

auditus ērām <sup>1</sup>	auditi ērāmūs
auditus ēras	auditi ērātis
auditus ērāt;	auditi ērant.

## FUTURE PERFECT.

*I shall or will have been heard.*

auditus ērō <sup>1</sup>	auditi ērimūs
auditus ēris	auditi ēritis
auditus ērit;	auditi ērant.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

*I may or can be heard.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audīār	audīamūr
audīārīs, or rē	audīamīni
audīātūr;	audīantūr.

IMPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

audīrēr	audīrēmūr
audīrērīs, or rē	audīrēmīni
audīrētūr;	audīrentūr.

PERFECT.

*I may have been heard.*

audītūs sīm <sup>1</sup>	audītī sīmūs
audītūs sis	audītī sitīs
audītūs sīt;	audītī sint.

PLUPERFECT.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

audītūs essēm <sup>1</sup>	audītī essēmūs
audītūs essēs	audītī essētīs
audītūs essēt;	audītī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. audīrē, be thou heard;	audīmīni, be ye heard.
FUT. audītōr, thou shalt be heard, audītōr, he shall be heard;	audīuntōr, they shall be heard.

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

PRES. audīri, to be heard.	
PERR. audītūs essē, to have been heard.	PERR. audītūs, heard.
FUT. audītūm iri, to be about to be heard.	FUT. audiendūs, to be heard.

<sup>1</sup> See 206, foot-notes.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.— ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Custodiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to guard.
Dormiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to sleep.
Erudiō, irē, ivi, itūm,	to instruct, refine, educate.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Audis, audiēbas, audies. 2. Auditis, audiebātis, audietis. 3. Audio, audimus. 4. Audiēbam, audiebāmus. 5. Audiam, audiēmus. 6. Audivimus, audiverāmus, audiverimus. 7. Audiui, audiveram, audivero. 8. Audivit, audiverunt. 9. Audiam, audirem, audiverim, audivissem. 10. Audiāmus, audirēmus, audiverimus, audivissēmus. 11. Audito, auditote.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I hear, I guard. 2. We hear, we guard. 3. He was hearing, they were sleeping. 4. He was sleeping, they were hearing. 5. He will hear, they will hear. 6. We have slept, you have heard. 7. I had heard, I had guarded. 8. He may hear, they may sleep. 9. They may hear, he may sleep. 10. He might hear, they might sleep. 11. He might sleep, they might hear.

## FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.— ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLIII.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitat, admōnet, ducit, custodit. 2. Invitant, admōnent, ducunt, custodiunt. 3. Invitabant, admōnebant, du-

cēbant, custodiēbant. 4. Invitābat, admonēbat, ducēbat, custodiēbat. 5. Invitavēram, admonuēram, duxēram, audivēram. 6. Invitaverāmus, admonuerāmus, duxerāmus, audiverāmus. 7. Invitavērim, admonuērim, duxērim, custodivērim. 8. Invitavērunt, admonuērunt, duxērunt, audivērunt.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We invite, we admonish, we lead, we instruct. 2. I was inviting, I was admonishing, I was leading, I was instructing. 3. We were praising, we were obeying, we were speaking, we were instructing. 4. He will blame, he will advise, he will speak, he will instruct. 5. I have invited, you have obeyed, he has led, they have guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION. — ACTIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLIV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Arctē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>closely, soundly.</i>
Mūniō, irē, ivi, itūm,	<i>to fortify.</i>
Sermō, sermōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>discourse, conversation.</i>
Thrasýbūlus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Thrasybulus, Athenian general.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cives urbem custodiēbant. 2. Urbem custodiēmus. 3. Milites templum custodiunt. 4. Verum auditis. 5. Verum audite. 6. Verum audiverāmus. 7. Verba tua audimus. 8. Verba mea audivistī. 9. Oratiōnem tuam audivi. 10. Sermōnem audiēbam. 11. Puēri arcte dormiunt. 12. Puēri cantum luscinae audiēbant. 13. Thrasybulus urbem munivit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Do you not hear us? 2. We hear you. 3. Who heard the oration? 4. We heard the oration. 5. The pupils heard the conversation. 6. They did not hear your oration. 7. The citizens are fortifying the city. 8. Who will guard this beautiful city? 9. The brave soldiers will guard the city. 10. Will you guard the temple? 11. We will guard the temple.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XLV.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Audīmur, audiebāmur, audiēmur. 2. Audiatur, audiantur. 3. Audīrer, audirēmur. 4. Audītus sum, auditi sumus. 5. Auditi erāmus, auditus eram. 6. Auditus erit, auditi erunt. 7. Audit, auditur. 8. Audiunt, audiuntur. 9. Audiet, audiētur. 10. Audirem, audirer. 11. Audiēbam, audiēbar. 12. Audiēbat, audiebātur. 13. Audivit, auditus est. 14. Audivērat, auditus erat.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. I am instructed, we are instructed. 2. He will be instructed, they will be instructed. 3. They have been heard, they have been instructed. 4. They had been heard, he had been instructed. 5. He was instructing, he was instructed. 6. They are instructing, they are instructed. 7. We have heard, you have been heard. 8. You have instructed, we have been instructed. 9. I have heard, you have been heard.

FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS.—PASSIVE VOICE.

EXERCISE XLVI.

I. *Translate into English.*

1. Invitāris, admonēris, educēris, custodiris. 2. Invitantur, admonentur, educuntur, custodiuntur. 3. Invitātur, admonētur, educitur, custoditur. 4. Invitabitur, admonebitur, educetur, custodiētur. 5. Invitabātur, admonebātur, educebātur, custodiebātur. 6. Invitātus sum, admonitus sum, eductus sum, custoditus sum. 7. Invitāti erant, admoniti erant, educti erant, custoditi erant. 8. Invitāti essēmus, educti essēmus. 9. Admonitus esses, custoditus esses.

II. *Translate into Latin.*

1. He is called, he is terrified, he is led forth, he is guarded. 2. They are called, they are terrified, they are led forth, they are guarded. 3. They will be loved, they will be advised, they will be led, they will be heard. 4. I have been blamed, I have been admonished, you had been ruled, you had been guarded. 5. You had been blamed, I had been admonished. 6. You have been ruled, I have been guarded.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

OTHER PARTS OF SPEECH.

EXERCISE XLVII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Bellūm, i, n.	war.
Bēnignē, adv.	kindly.
Civilis, ē.	civil.

Egrēgiē, <i>adv.</i>	<i>excellently.</i>
Filiūs, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>son.</i>
Finiō, <i>irē, ivi, itūm,</i>	<i>to finish, bring to a close.</i>
Lēgatiō, <i>lēgatiōnis, f.</i>	<i>embassy.</i>
Vox, <i>vōcis, f.</i>	<i>voice.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Vox audita<sup>1</sup> est. 2. Voces audiuntur. 3. Cantus luscinae auditur. 4. Cantus lusciniarum audiētur. 5. Urbs munita erat. 6. Urbes muniuntur. 7. Templum custodiētur. 8. Tempa custodiuntur. 9. Legatio benigne audita est. 10. Haec legatio benigne audiētur. 11. Verba tua benigne audientur. 12. Filii regis egregie erudiuntur. 13. Bellum civile finitum<sup>1</sup> est.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not the orator heard? 2. The renowned orator was kindly heard. 3. Let the city be fortified.<sup>2</sup> 4. Let the temples be guarded. 5. The city has been fortified. 6. The temples will be guarded. 7. Let the war be brought to a close. 8. Let the boys be instructed. 9. Let the words of the instructor be heard.

## FIRST, SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS. — MISCELLANEOUS EXAMPLES.

### EXERCISE XLVIII.

#### I. *Vocabulary.*

Athēniensis, <i>is, m. and f.</i>	<i>an Athenian.</i>
Cānis, <i>cānis, m. and f.</i>	<i>dog.</i>
Cōlē, <i>cōlēre, cōlui, cultūm,</i>	<i>to practise, cultivate.</i>
Cūm, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>with.</i>

<sup>1</sup> Why *audita* and *finitum*, instead of *auditus* and *finitus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

<sup>2</sup> *Let be fortified* is to be rendered into Latin by a single verb in the Subjunctive. See 196, I. 2.

Firmō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to strengthen.</i>
Gre <sup>x</sup> , grēgis, <i>m.</i>	<i>herd, flock.</i>
Illust <sup>r</sup> ō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to illumine.</i>
Jungō, jungērē, junxi, junctūm,	<i>to join.</i>
Lābō <sup>r</sup> , lābōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>labor.</i>
Mōdestiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>modesty.</i>
Ovis, ōvis, <i>f.</i>	<i>sheep.</i>
Portū <sup>s</sup> , ūs, <i>m.</i>	<i>port, harbor.</i>
Prudentiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>prudence.</i>
Terrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>earth.</i>
Vālētūdō, vālētūdinis, <i>f.</i>	<i>health.</i>
Vāriētās, vāriētātis, <i>f.</i>	<i>variety.</i>
Viōlō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>violate.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Sol terram illustrat. 2. Modestia pueros ornat. 3. Discipuli memoriam exercent. 4. Discipuli tui memoriam exercēbant. 5. Canes gregem custodiēbant. 6. Greges ovium custodiuntur. 7. Praeceptōres juventūtem erudient. 8. Labor valetudinē tuam firmābit. 9. Variētās nos delectat. 10. Athenienses portum munivērunt. 11. Philosophia nos erudit.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Good men love virtue. 2. Virtue will always<sup>1</sup> be loved. 3. Let virtue be always practised. 4. We will always practise virtue. 5. The soldiers are violating the laws of the state. 6. They will be punished. 7. Will you instruct these boys? 8. We will instruct good boys. 9. Who<sup>2</sup> led this army into Italy? 10. Hannibal led the army into Italy.

<sup>1</sup> For the syntax of adverbs, and for their place in the Latin sentence, see Rule LI. and note 4, p. 72.

<sup>2</sup> Which form of the Interrogative should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.



## VERBS IN IO OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. *Verbs in io* are generally of the fourth conjugation; and even the few which are of the third are inflected with the endings of the fourth wherever those endings have two successive vowels, as follows:

## ACTIVE VOICE.

214. *Capio, I take.*

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Supine.
cāpiō,	cāpĕrĕ,	cēpī,	captūm.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
cāpiō, cāpis, cāpit;	cāpimūs, cāpitīs, cāpiunt.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpiebām, -iebās, -iebāt;	cāpiebāmūs, -iebātīs, -iebant.
FUTURE.	
cāpiām, -iēs, -iēt;	cāpiēmūs, -iētīs, -ient.
PERFECT.	
cēpī, -istī, -it;	cēpimūs, -istīs, -erunt, or ērē.
PLUPERFECT.	
cēpĕrām, -ērās, -ērāt;	cēpĕrāmūs, -ērātīs, -erant.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
cēpĕrō, -eris, -erit;	cēpĕrimūs, -eritīs, -erint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## PRESENT.

cāpiām, -iās, -iāt;	cāpiāmūs, -iātīs, -iant.
IMPERFECT.	
cāpĕrēm, -erēs, -erēt;	cāpĕrēmūs, -erētīs, -erent.
PERFECT.	
cēpĕrīm, -eris, -erit;	cēpĕrīmūs, -eritīs, -erint.
PLUPERFECT.	
cēpissēm, -issēs, -issēt;	cēpissēmūs, -issētīs, -issent.

IMPERATIVE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
PRES.	cāpē;		cāpītē.
FUT.	cāpītō, cāpītō;		cāpītōte, cāpiuntō.
INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLE.	
PRES.	cāpērē.		PRES. cāpiens.
PERF.	cēpissē.		
FUT.	captūrus essē.		FUT. captūrus.
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
Gen.	cāpiendī.		
Dat.	cāpiendō.		
Acc.	cāpiendūm.		Acc. captūm.
Ab.	cāpiendō.		Ab. captū.

PASSIVE VOICE.

215. Capior, *I am taken.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.
cāpiōr,	cāpī,	captūs sūm.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
cāpiōr,	cāpēris, cāpītūr;		cāpīmūr, cāpīmīnī, cāpiuntūr.
IMPERFECT.			
cāpiēbār,	īēbāris, īēbātūr;		cāpiēbāmūr, īēbāmīnī, īēbantūr.
FUTURE.			
cāpiār,	īēris, īētūr;		cāpiēmūr, īēmīnī, īentur.
PERFECT.			
captūs sūm,	ēs, est;		captī sūmūs, estīs, sunt.
PLUPERFECT.			
captūs ērām,	ērās, ērāt;		captī ērāmūs, ērātīs, ērant.
FUTURE PERFECT.			
captūs ērō,	ērīs, ērit;		captī ērimūs, ēritīs, ērunt.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
căpiār, -iāris, -iātūr;	căpiāmūr, -iāmīni, -iantūr.
IMPERFECT.	
căpērēr, -ērēris, -ērētūr;	căpērēmūr, -ērēmīni, -ērentūr.
PERFECT.	
captūs sīm, sis, sīt;	capti simūs, sītis, sint.
PLUPERFECT.	
captūs essēm, essēs, essēt;	capti essēmūs, essētis, essent.

## IMPERATIVE.

PRES. căpērē;	căpīminī.
FUT. căpītōr, căpītōr;	căpiuntōr.

## INFINITIVE.

## PARTICIPLE.

PRES. căpi.		
PERF. captūs essē.		PERF. captūs.
FUT. captūm iri.		FUT. căpiendūs. <sup>1</sup>

## EXERCISE XLIX.

## I. Vocabulary.

A, ūb, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<i>from, by.</i>
Accipiō, accipērē, accēpi, acceptūm,	<i>to receive.</i>
Bellūm, i, n.	<i>war.</i>
Căpiō, căpērē, cēpi, captūm,	<i>to take, capture.</i>
Carthāgō, Carthāginis, f.	<i>Carthage, city in Africa.</i>
Cornēliūs, ii, m.	<i>Cornelius, a proper name.</i>
Gallūs, i, m.	<i>Gaul, a Gaul.<sup>2</sup></i>

<sup>1</sup> The pupil will observe that the conjugation of *Capio* is somewhat peculiar, combining certain characteristics of the *Fourth Conjugation* with others of the *Third*. He should now carefully compare it with the conjugation of *Rego* and with that of *Audio*, and note with accuracy both the differences and the resemblances.

<sup>2</sup> The Gauls were a people inhabiting the country of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.

Jāciō, jācērē, jēci, jactūm,	<i>to cast, throw, hurl.</i>
Lāpis, lapidis, <i>m.</i>	<i>stone.</i>
Lux, lucis, <i>f.</i>	<i>light.</i>
Mūrūs, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>wall.</i>
Publius, <i>ii, m.</i>	<i>Publius, a proper name.</i>
Rēgūlus, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Regulus, Roman general.</i>
Telūm, <i>i, n.</i>	<i>javelin.</i>
Trojā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>Troy, city in Asia Minor.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Graeci Trojam capiēbant. 2. Trojam cepērunt. 3. Troja capta<sup>1</sup> est. 4. Troja capta erat. 5. Regūlus ipse captus est. 6. Belli duces capientur. 7. Haec urbs capiētur. 8. Illam urbem capiēmus. 9. Roma a Gallis<sup>2</sup> capta erat. 10. Galli Romam cepērant. 11. Scipio multas civitates cepit. 12. Luna lucem a sole accipit. 13. Lucem a sole accipimus. 14. Tuam<sup>3</sup> epistolam accēpi. 15. Milites tela jaciēbant.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. We were taking the city. 2. The city will be taken. 3. The city has been taken. 4. The cities will be taken. 5. The cities have been taken. 6. Who<sup>4</sup> took Carthage? 7. Publius Cornelius Scipio took Carthage. 8. Have you not<sup>5</sup> received my letter? 9. I have received your letter. 10. Have you not received five letters? 11. We have received ten letters.

<sup>1</sup> For the agreement of the participle in the compound tenses with the subject, see Rule XXXV. 1, page 54.

<sup>2</sup> See Rule XXXII., page 24.

<sup>3</sup> What is the usual place of the Possessive Pronoun? See page 77, note 1. In this sentence, *tuam* precedes its noun because it is emphatic.

<sup>4</sup> Which form of the Interrogative Pronoun should be used, *quis* or *qui*? See 188.

<sup>5</sup> Which Interrogative Particle should be used? See 346, II. 1, page 59.

## PART THIRD.

## S Y N T A X.

## CHAPTER I.

## SYNTAX OF SENTENCES.

## SECTION I.

## CLASSIFICATION OF SENTENCES.

343. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

344. A sentence is thought expressed in language.

345. In their STRUCTURE, sentences are either *Simple*, *Complex*, or *Compound*:

I. A SIMPLE SENTENCE expresses but a single thought:

*Deus mundum aedificavit, God made the world. Cic.*

II. A COMPLEX SENTENCE expresses two (or more) thoughts, so related that one is dependent upon the other:

*Dñec ẽris felix, multos nũmerãbis ãmicos; So long as you are prosperous, you will number many friends. Ovid.*

1. CLAUSES. — In this example, two simple sentences, (1) "*You will be prosperous,*" and (2) "*You will number many friends,*" are so united that the first only specifies the time of the second: *You will number many friends, (when?) so long as you are prosperous.* The parts thus united are called *Clauses* or *Members*.

III. A COMPOUND SENTENCE expresses two or more independent thoughts:

*Sol ruit, et montes umbrantur, The sun descends, and the mountains are shaded. Virg.*

346. In their USE, sentences are either *Declarative*, *Interrogative*, *Imperative*, or *Exclamatory*.

I. A DECLARATIVE SENTENCE has the form of an assertion :

*Miltiades accusatus est, Miltiades was accused.* Nep.

II. An INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a question :

*Quis non paupertatem extimescit, Who does not fear poverty ?* Cic.

1. INTERROGATIVE WORDS. — Interrogative sentences generally contain some interrogative word, — either an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb, or one of the interrogative particles, *ne, nonne, num* :

1) Questions with *ne* ask for information : *Scribitne, Is he writing ?* *Ne* is always thus appended to some other word.

2) Questions with *nonne* expect the answer *yes* : *Nonne scribit, Is he not writing ?*

3) Questions with *num* expect the answer *no* : *Num scribit, Is he writing ?*

III. An IMPERATIVE SENTENCE has the form of a command, exhortation, or entreaty :

*Justitiam cole, Cultivate justice.* Cic.

IV. An EXCLAMATORY SENTENCE has the form of an exclamation :

*Reliquit quos viros, What heroes he has left !* Cic.

## SECTION II.

### SIMPLE SENTENCES.

#### ELEMENTS OF SENTENCES.

347. The simple sentence in its *most simple form* consists of two distinct parts, expressed or implied :

1. The SUBJECT, or that of which it speaks.
2. The PREDICATE, or that which is said of the subject:

*Cluilius moritur, Cluilius dies.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius* is the subject, and *moritur* the predicate.

348. The simple sentence in its *most expanded form* consists only of these same parts with their various modifiers :

In his castris Cluilius, Albānus rex, mōritur; *Cluilius, the Alban king, dies in this camp.* Liv.

Here *Cluilius, Albānus rex*, is the subject in its enlarged or modified form, and in *his castris moritur* is the predicate in its enlarged or modified form.

349. PRINCIPAL AND SUBORDINATE. — The subject and predicate, being essential to the structure of every sentence, are called the *Principal* or *Essential* elements; but their modifiers, being subordinate to these, are called the *Subordinate* elements.

350. SIMPLE AND COMPLEX. — The elements, whether principal or subordinate, may be either simple or complex:

1. *Simple*, when not modified by other words.
2. *Complex*, when thus modified.<sup>1</sup>

#### SIMPLE SUBJECT.

351. The subject of a sentence must be a noun, or some word or words used as a noun:

*Rex*<sup>2</sup> dēcrēvit, *The king decreed.* Nep. *Ego*<sup>3</sup> ad te scribo, *I write to you.* Cic.

#### SIMPLE PREDICATE.

353. The simple predicate must be either a verb or the copula *sum* with a noun or adjective:

*Miltiādes est accūsātus*,<sup>3</sup> *Miltiades was accused.* Nep. *Tu es testis*, *You are a witness.* Cic. *Fortūna caeca est*, *Fortune is blind.* Cic.

1. Like *Sum*, several other verbs sometimes unite with a noun or adjective to form the predicate. A noun or adjective thus used is called a *Predicate Noun* or *Predicate Adjective*.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Thus, in the example given above, the simple subject is *Cluilius*; the complex, *Cluilius, Albānus rex*; the simple predicate, *mōritur*; the complex, *in his castris moritur*.

<sup>2</sup> In these examples, the noun *rex* and the pronoun *ego*, used as a noun, are the subjects.

<sup>3</sup> In the first of these examples, the predicate is the verb, *est accūsātus*; in the second, the noun and copula, *est testis*; and in the third, the adjective and copula, *caeca est*.

<sup>4</sup> Thus *testis*, in the second example, is a *Predicate Noun*, and *caeca*, in the third, is a *Predicate Adjective*.

## CHAPTER II.

### SYNTAX OF NOUNS.

#### SECTION I.

##### AGREEMENT OF NOUNS.

#### RULE I. — Predicate Nouns.<sup>1</sup>

362. A Predicate Noun<sup>2</sup> denoting the same person or thing as its Subject agrees with it in CASE:

Ego sum nuntius,<sup>2</sup> *I am a messenger.* Liv. Servius rex est declaratus, *Servius was declared king.* Liv.

#### EXERCISE L.

##### I. Vocabulary.

Amnis, amnis, m.	river.
Creō, arē, avi, atum,	to create, make, elect.
Graeciā, ae, f.	Greece.
Impērātōr, impērātōris, m.	commander.
Lātinūs, i, m.	Latinus, Italian king.
Lāvinia, ae, f.	Lavinia, a proper name.
Mālūm, i, n.	evil.
Nōmīnō, arē, avi, atum,	to call, name.
Nūmā, ae, m.	Numa, Roman king.
Rhēnūs, i, m.	the Rhine, river in Europe.
Serviūs, ii, m.	Servius, Roman king.
Stultitiā, ae, f.	folly.
Tūm, adv.	then, at that time.

<sup>1</sup> In illustrating in the subsequent pages the leading principles of the Latin Syntax, we shall take up the most common Rules in the order in which they stand in the Grammar. In doing so, we shall repeat in their proper places those Rules which we have had occasion to anticipate in the previous Exercises.

<sup>2</sup> See 353, 1; also Rule I. note, p. 59.



II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicĕro consul<sup>1</sup> fuit.<sup>2</sup> 2. Cicĕro orātor fuit. 3. Cicĕro tum<sup>3</sup> erat<sup>4</sup> orātor clarissĭmus.<sup>4</sup> 4. Puer orātor erit.
5. Numa erat rex. 6. Numa rex<sup>1</sup> creātus est. 7. Cato imperātor fuit. 8. Cato magnus imperātor fuit. 9. Scipio consul creātus est. 10. Scipio consul fuĕrat. 11. Stultitia est malum. 12. Gloria est fructus virtutis. 13. Graecia artium<sup>5</sup> mater nominātur.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The Rhine is a large *river*. 2. Rome was a beautiful *city*. 3. Cato was a wise *man*. 4. Your father is a wise man. 5. Lavinia was the daughter of the king. 6. Latinus was king. 7. Lavinia was the daughter of Latinus. 8. Tullia was the daughter of Servius.

## APPOSITIVES.

## RULE II. — Appositives.

363. An Appositive<sup>6</sup> agrees with its Subject in CASE:

Cluilius rex<sup>6</sup> mōritur, *Cluilius the king dies*. Liv. Urbes Carthāgo<sup>6</sup> atque Nūmantia, *the cities Carthage and Numantia*. Cic. †

<sup>1</sup> Predicate Noun. See Rule I. For Model for parsing Predicate Nouns, see p. 59.

<sup>2</sup> For the *place* of the verb with Predicate Nouns, see note on *fuit* under Exercise XIX.

<sup>3</sup> Adverb qualifying *erat*. See Rule LI. p. 72.

<sup>4</sup> See 162; also Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>5</sup> *Artium* depends upon *mater*. See Rule XVI. p. 22.

<sup>6</sup> See 363, note, p. 15; also Model, p. 16. *Rex*, *Carthāgo*, and *Nūmantia* are all Predicate Nouns.

## EXERCISE LI.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Alexandër, Alexandri, <i>m.</i>	<i>Alexander, the Great.</i>
Conjux, conjūgis, <i>m. and f.</i>	<i>wife, husband.</i>
Epirūs, <i>i, f.</i>	<i>Epirus, country in Greece.</i>
Erūditūs, ā, ūm,	<i>learned, instructed in.</i>
Hannō, Hannōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Hanno, Carthaginian general.</i>
Justūs, ā, ūm,	<i>just, upright.</i>
Mācēdōniā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>Macedonia, Macedon.</i>
Nēpōs, nēpōtis, <i>m.</i>	<i>grandson.</i>
Paulūs, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Paulus, Roman consul.</i>
Philippūs, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Philip, king of Macedon.</i>
Pyrrhūs, <i>i, m.</i>	<i>Pyrrhus, king of Epirus.</i>
Vulnerō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to wound.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicēro, eruditissimū *homo*,<sup>1</sup> consul<sup>2</sup> fuit. 2. Numa, justissimū *vir*, erat rex. 3. Ancus, Numae *nepos*,<sup>1</sup> rex fuit. 4. Hanno *dux* captus est.<sup>3</sup> 5. Pyrrhus, Epīri rex, vulnerātus est. 6. Philippus, rex Macedoniae, Athenienses superāvit. 7. Paulus consul<sup>1</sup> regem superāvit. 8. Philosophia, mater bonarum artium, nos erūdit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Tullia, *the daughter*<sup>1</sup> of Servius, was the wife<sup>2</sup> of Tarquin. 2. Servius, *the father* of Tullia, was a king. 3. Scipio, *the leader* of the Romans, took Carthage. 4. Scipio the general was praised. 5. Philip, king of Macedonia, was the father of Alexander. 6. Alexander, the son of Philip, was king of Macedonia.

<sup>1</sup> Appositive. See Rule II. For Model for parsing Appositives, see p. 16.

<sup>2</sup> Predicate Noun. See Rule I.

<sup>3</sup> See 214.

## SECTION II.

## NOMINATIVE.

364. CASES. — Nouns have different forms or cases to mark the various relations in which they are used. These cases, in accordance with their general force, may be arranged and characterized as follows :

I. Nominative,	Case of the Subject.
II. Vocative,	Case of Address.
III. Accusative,	Case of Direct Object.
IV. Dative,	Case of Indirect Object.
V. Genitive,	Case of Adjective Relations.
VI. Ablative,	Case of Adverbial Relations. <sup>1</sup>

## RULE III.—Subject Nominative.

367. The Subject of a Finite verb is put in the Nominative :

*Servius regnāvit, Servius reigned. Liv. Pātent portae, The gates are open. Cic. Rex vicit, The king conquered. Liv.*

1. The Subject is always a substantive, a pronoun, or some word or clause used substantively :

*Ego rēges ejēci, I have banished kings. Cic.*

2. SUBJECT OMITTED. — See 460, 2, p. 54.

## EXERCISE LII.

## I. Vocabulary.

<i>Libertās, libertātis, f.</i>	<i>liberty.</i>
<i>Opulentūs, ō, ūm,</i>	<i>rich, opulent.</i>
<i>Quōtidie, adv.</i>	<i>daily.</i>
<i>Vitiūm, ii, n.</i>	<i>fault, vice.</i>
<i>Oppidum, i, n.</i>	<i>town, city.</i>

<sup>1</sup> This arrangement is adopted in the discussion of the cases, because it is thought it will best present the force of the several cases, and their relation to each other.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Italia*<sup>1</sup> liberāta<sup>2</sup> est. 2. *Urbs* Roma liberāta erat. 3. Haec *urbs* clarissīma liberabītur. 4. Haec *urbs* opulentissīma est capta. 5. Virtus quotidie laudātur. 6. Virtūtes semper laudabuntur. 7. Sapientia semper est laudāta. 8. Libertas semper laudabītur. 9. Omnia hostium oppīda expugnāta sunt.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Was not *Philip* wounded? 2. *Philip*, king of Macedonia, was wounded. 3. Many *soldiers* were wounded. 4. Did not the soldiers fight bravely? 5. The soldiers fought bravely. 6. Will not the laws be observed? 7. The laws have been observed. 8. They will be observed.

## SECTION III.

## VOCATIVE.

## RULE IV. — Case of Address.

369. The Name of the person or thing addressed is put in the Vocative :

Perge, Laeli,<sup>3</sup> *Proceed, Laelius.* Cic. Quid est, Cātīlina,<sup>3</sup> *Why is it, Catiline?* Cic. Tuum est, Servi,<sup>3</sup> *regnum. The kingdom is yours, Servius.* Liv.

## EXERCISE LIII.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Anditōr, auditōris, m.	hearer, auditor.
Cārūs, ā, ūm,	dear.
Jūvenīs, is, m. and f.	a youth, young man.
Lēgātūs, i, m.	ambassador.
Sālūtō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to salute.

<sup>1</sup> Subject of *liberāta est*. See Rule III. For Model for parsing Subjects, see p. 57.

<sup>2</sup> Why *liberāta* rather than *liberātus*? See Rule XXXV. 1, p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> *Laeli*, *Cātīlina*, and *Servi* are all in the Vocative by this Rule. *Laeli* is for *Laelie*; and *Servi*, for *Servie*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Te, *Scipio*,<sup>1</sup> salutāmus. 2. Vos, *amici*<sup>1</sup> carissīmi,<sup>2</sup> salūto. 3. Vos, *auditōres* omnes, salutāmus. 4. Verba mea, *judices*, audite. 5. Haec verba, *legāti*, audite. 6. Vos, milites, hanc urbem clarissimam custodite. 7. Milites<sup>1</sup> fortissīmi, patriam vestram liberāte. 8. Vestram virtutem, *juvēnes*, laudāmus.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. *Boys*,<sup>1</sup> hear the words of your father. 2. *Judges*, you shall hear the truth. 3. *Father*, have we not spoken the truth? 4. You, boys, have spoken the truth. 5. Soldiers, you have fought bravely. 6. You, brave soldiers, have saved your country. 7. Pupils, I praise your diligence.

## SECTION IV.

## ACCUSATIVE.

## RULE V.—Direct Object.

371. The Direct Object<sup>3</sup> of an action is put in the Accusative :

Deus mundum aedificāvit, *God made the world*.<sup>4</sup> Cic. Libēram publicam, *Free the republic*. Cic. Pōpūli Rōmāni salūtem dēfendite, *Defend the safety of the Roman people*. Cic.

<sup>1</sup> In the Vocative, according to Rule IV. No special Model for parsing is deemed necessary, as all nouns are parsed substantially in the same way; though different Rules are, of course, assigned for different cases. See Directions for Parsing, p. 15; also Model, p. 16.

The Vocative is not often the first word in the sentence, though it is sometimes thus placed, as in the seventh sentence in this Exercise.

<sup>2</sup> See 162.

<sup>3</sup> See note on Direct Object, p. 70.

<sup>4</sup> See note on the position of the Object in the Latin sentence, p. 70.

## EXERCISE LIV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Flāminius, ii, m.	Flāminius, Roman general.
Marcellus, i, m.	Marcellus, Roman general.
Poenus, ā, ūm,	Carthaginian.
Poenus, i, m.	a Carthaginian.
Sanctus, ā, ūm,	holy, sacred.
Siciliā, ae, f.	Sicily, the island of.
Spōliū, āre, āvi, itum,	to rob, spoil, despoil.
Syrācūsae, ārum, f. plur.	Syracuse, city in Sicily.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Alexander multas *urbes*<sup>1</sup> expugnāvit. 2. Italia pulchras *urbes* habuit. 3. Hostes *templa* spoliabant. 4. *Templa* sanctissima spoliaverunt. 5. Hannibal Flaminium<sup>1</sup> consulem<sup>2</sup> superavit. 6. Poeni Siciliam occupaverant. 7. Marcellus<sup>3</sup> magnam hujus insulae<sup>4</sup> partem cepit. 8. Marcellus Syracusas,<sup>1</sup> nobilissimam urbem,<sup>2</sup> expugnāvit.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Do you not<sup>5</sup> love your *parents*?<sup>1</sup> 2. We love our *parents*. 3. You practise *virtue*. 4. Our pupils will practise *virtue*. 5. Did not Rome have beautiful temples? 6. Rome had beautiful temples. 7. Have not the enemy<sup>6</sup> taken the city? 8. They have taken the beautiful city. 9. They will plunder all the temples.

<sup>1</sup> Direct Object, in the Accusative, according to Rule V. For Model for parsing, see p. 71.

<sup>2</sup> Appositive. See Rule II. 363.

<sup>3</sup> Apply to this sentence Suggestions IV. and V.

<sup>4</sup> *Hujus insulae*, of this island; i.e., of Sicily. Observe the position of the Genitive between the adjective *magnam* and its noun *partem*. See note on *pondus*, Exercise XXX. II. 10.

<sup>5</sup> See 346, II. 1.

<sup>6</sup> The Latin word must be in the plural.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

## RULE VIII.—Accusative of Time and Space.

378. DURATION OF TIME, and EXTENT OF SPACE, are expressed by the Accusative :

Rōmulus septem et triginta regnāvit annos,<sup>1</sup> *Romulus reigned thirty-seven years.* Liv. Quinque millia passuum ambūlare, *To walk five miles.* Cic. Pēdes octōginta distāre, *To be eighty feet distant.* Caes. Nix quattuor pēdes<sup>1</sup> alta, *Snow four feet deep.* Liv.

## EXERCISE LV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Agger, aggeris, m.	mound, rampart.
Ambulō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to walk.
Centūm,	hundred.
Gladius, ii, m.	sword.
Lacedaemonius, ii, m.	a Lacedaemonian, Spartan.
Lātus, ā, ūm,	broad, wide.
Longus, ā, ūm,	long.
Mensis, mensis, m.	month.
Nox, noctis, f.	night.
Octogintā,	eighty.
Pēs, pēdis, m.	foot.
Quinquagintā,	fifty.
Regnō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to reign.
Vigilō, arē, āvi, ātūm,	to watch, be awake.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Lacedaemonii pacem sex annos<sup>2</sup> servaverunt. 2. Magnam noctis partem<sup>2</sup> vigilaveram. 3. Puer octo horas

<sup>1</sup> Annos denotes *Duration of Time*, while millia and pedes denote *Extent of Space*. They are all in the Accusative by this Rule.

<sup>2</sup> In the Accusative denoting *Duration of Time*. See Rule VIII. No special Model for parsing is necessary. The pupil will be guided by previous directions and Models.

dormivit. 4. Latinus multos *annos* regnāvit. 5. In Italiā sex menses fuīmus. 6. In illā urbe decem dies fuīmus. 7. Agger octoginta pedes<sup>1</sup> latus fuit. 8. Hic gladius sex pedes longus est.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did you not walk two *hours*? 2. We walked three *hours*. 3. Did you not sleep six *hours*? 4. We slept eight hours. 5. The soldiers guarded the city ten months. 6. Were you not in the city four months? 7. We were in the city five months. 8. The mound was fifty feet high.

### ACCUSATIVE OF LIMIT.

#### RULE IX. — Accusative of Limit.

379. The Name of a Town used as the Limit of motion is put in the Accusative :

Nuntius Rōmam rēdit, *The messenger returns to Rome.* Liv. Plāto Tārentum<sup>2</sup> vēnit, *Plato came to Tarentum.* Cic. Fūgit Tarquinios,<sup>3</sup> *He fled to Tarquinii.* Cic.

### EXERCISE LVI.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Athēnae, ārūm, <i>f. plur.</i>	<i>Athens, capital of Attica.</i>
Fūgiō, fūgērē, fūgi, fūgītūm,	<i>to flee, fly, run away.</i>
Lŷsandēr, Lŷsandri, <i>m.</i>	<i>Lysander, Spartan general.</i>
Miltiādēs, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>Miltiades, Athenian general.</i>
Nāvīgō, ārē, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to sail, sail to.</i>

<sup>1</sup> In the Accusative, denoting *Extent of Space*.

<sup>2</sup> *Romam, Tarentum, and Tarquinios* are all names of towns used as the *Limit of Motion*; i.e., the motion is represented as ending in those towns. They are in the Accusative, according to Rule IX.



<i>Rēducō, rēducēre, rēdūxi, rēductum,</i>	<i>to lead back.</i>
<i>Rēvocō, arē, āvi, ātūm,</i>	<i>to recall.</i>
<i>Spartā, ae, f.</i>	<i>Sparta, capital of Laconia.</i>
<i>Tarentum, i, n.</i>	<i>Tarentum, Italian town.</i>
<i>Thebanūs, ā, ūm,</i>	<i>Theban.</i>
<i>Thebanūs, i, m.</i>	<i>a Theban.</i>

## II. *Translate into English.*

1. Cicero *Romam*<sup>1</sup> revocatus est. 2. Consules *Romam* revocati sunt. 3. Hannibal *Carthaginem*<sup>1</sup> revocatus erat. 4. Lysander *Athēnas*<sup>1</sup> navigavit. 5. Pyrrhus Tarentum fugatus est. 6. Consul regem Tarentum fugavit. 7. Thebani exercitum Spartam ducunt. 8. Miltiades exercitum Athēnas reduxit.

## III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Who fled to Carthage?<sup>2</sup> 2. Did not the enemy flee to Carthage? 3. They fled to Carthage. 4. Will not the army be led back to Rome?<sup>2</sup> 5. The army has been led back to Rome. 6. The commander led the army to Athens.

## SECTION V.

### DATIVE.

382. The Dative is the Case of the Indirect Object, and is used,

- I. With Verbs.
- II. With Adjectives.
- III. With their Derivatives, — Adverbs and Substantives.

### DATIVE WITH VERBS.

383. INDIRECT OBJECT. — A verb is often attended by a noun designating the object indirectly affected by the

<sup>1</sup> In the Accusative, according to Rule IX.

<sup>2</sup> The Latin word will be in the Accusative, in accordance with Rule IX.

action,—that TO or FOR which something is or is done. A noun thus used is called an Indirect Object.

### RULE XII.—Dative with Verbs.

384. The INDIRECT OBJECT is put in the Dative :

#### I. With INTRANSITIVE and PASSIVE Verbs :

Tempōri<sup>1</sup> cēdit, *He yields to the time.* Cic. Sibi timuērant, *They had feared for themselves.* Caes. Lābōri student, *They devote themselves to labor.* Caes. Nōbis<sup>1</sup> vita dāta est, *Life has been granted to us.* Cic. Nūmītōri dēditur, *He is delivered to Numitor.* Liv.

#### II. With TRANSITIVE Verbs, in connection with the ACCUSATIVE :

Pons iter hostībus<sup>2</sup> dēdit, *The bridge gave a passage to the enemy.* Liv. Lēges civitātībus suis scripserunt, *They prepared laws for their states.* Cic.

### EXERCISE LVII.

#### I. Vocabulary.

Carthāgīniensīs, ē,	Carthaginian.
Carthāgīniensīs, is, m. and f.	a Carthaginian.
Cōnōn, Cōnōnīs, m.	Conon, Athenian gen'l.
Dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbui, dēbitūm,	to owe.
Displicēō, displicēre, displicui, displicitūm,	to displease.
Dōnō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to give.
Gens, gentīs, f.	race.
Grātiā, ae, f.	favor, gratitude, thanks.
Lābōrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	to strive for.

<sup>1</sup> Tempōri, sibi, and labōri are in the Dative with the Intransitive verbs *cedit*, *timuērant* (intransitive here), and *student*; while *nobis* and *Numitōri* are in the Dative with the Passive verbs *data est* and *deditur*.

<sup>2</sup> Hostībus is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *iter*, with the Transitive verb *dedit*. In the same way, *civitātibus* is in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *leges*, with the Transitive verb *scripserunt*.

Monstrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to show, point out.</i>
Plāceō, plācerē, plācui, plācītūm,	<i>to please.</i>
Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, <i>f.</i>	<i>old age.</i>
Sententiā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>opinion.</i>
Serviō, servirē, servivī, servitūm,	<i>to serve.</i>
Viā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>way, road.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Cives *legibus*<sup>1</sup> parent. 2. Multae Italiae civitatēs *Romānis* parēbant. 3. Haec sententia *Caesāri*<sup>1</sup> placuit. 4. Illa sententia *Caesāri* displicuit. 5. Milites gloriae labōrant. 6. Hoc consilium *Caesāri* nuntiātum est. 7. Nostra consilia hostibus nuntiāta sunt. 8. *Tibi*<sup>2</sup> magnam *gratiam* habēmus. 9. Habeo *senectūti* magnam *gratiam*. 10. Conon pecuniam civibus donāvit. 11. Pastor puēro viam monstrāvit. 12. Tibi viam monstrābo. 13. Romāni Carthaginiensibus bellum indixērunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Did I not obey my<sup>3</sup> *father*?<sup>1</sup> 2. You obeyed your *father*. 3. We will obey *the laws* of the state. 4. Do not the citizens serve *the king*? 5. They have served the king. 6. Will you not serve the state? 7. We will serve the state. 8. Will you not tell *me* (to me<sup>4</sup>) *the truth*?<sup>5</sup> 9. I have told *you* (to you) *the truth*. 10. Will you show

<sup>1</sup> Indirect Object, in the Dative, according to Rule XII. I.

<sup>2</sup> Indirect Object, in the Dative, in connection with the Accusative *gratiam* with the Transitive verb *habēmus*, according to Rule XII. II.

In the arrangement of Objects, the *Indirect* generally precedes the *Direct*, as in this sentence; though the order is sometimes reversed, as in the tenth sentence in this Exercise.

<sup>3</sup> In examples like this, the Possessive pronoun may either be expressed or omitted, as it is often omitted in Latin when not emphatic.

<sup>4</sup> Dative. See Rule XII. II.

<sup>5</sup> Accusative. See Rule XII. II.

me (to me) the way? 11. We will show you the way.  
 12. Did they declare war against the Romans? 13.  
 They had declared war against the Romans.

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## RULE XIV.—Dative.

391. With Adjectives, the OBJECT TO WHICH the quality is directed is put in the Dative :

*Patriae solum omnibus<sup>1</sup> carum est, The soil of their country is dear to all.* Cic. *Id aptum est tempori, This is adapted to the time.*  
 Cic. *Omni aetati mors est communis, Death is common to every age.*  
 Cic. *Canis similis lupo est, A dog is similar to a wolf.* Cic. *Naturae accommodatum, Adapted to nature.* Cic. *Graeciae utile, Useful to Greece.* Nep.

1. ADJECTIVES WITH DATIVE.—The most common are those signifying :

*Agreeable, easy, friendly, like, near, necessary, suitable, subject, useful, together with others of a similar or opposite meaning, and verbals in bilis.*

## EXERCISE LVIII.

## I. Vocabulary.

Amicus, a, ūm,	friendly.
Hispaniā, ae, f.	Spain.
Multitūdō, multitudinis, f.	multitude.
Saguntum, i, n.	Saguntum, city in Spain.
Similis, ē,	like.
Solum, i, n.	soil.
Veritas, veritatis, f.	verity, truth.

<sup>1</sup> Dative, showing to whom the soil is dear, — dear TO ALL. In the same way in these examples, *tempori* is used with *aptum*, *aetati* with *communis*, *lupo* with *similis*, *naturae* with *accommodatum*, and *Graeciae* with *utile*.

II. *Translate into English.*

1. *Parentes nobis*<sup>1</sup> cari sunt. 2. *Patria nobis* cara est.  
 3. *Patria tibi*<sup>1</sup> erit carissima. 4. *Patriae solum nobis* carum  
 est. 5. Hannibal exercitui carus fuit. 6. *Victoria Romā-*  
*nis* grata fuit. 7. *Libertas multitudini* grata est. 8. *Veri-*  
*tas nobis* gratissima est. 9. *Jucunda mihi* oratio fuit. 10.  
*Saguntum Romānis* amicum fuit. 11. Hannibal *Sagun-*  
*tum*,<sup>2</sup> *Hispaniae civitatem*<sup>3</sup> *Romānis*<sup>4</sup> *amicam*,<sup>5</sup> expugnāvit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not these books be useful to you? 2. They are  
 useful to us. 3. They will be useful to you. 4. This law  
 has been useful to the state. 5. Will not this book be ac-  
 ceptable to you? 6. That book will be acceptable to me.  
 7. This book will be most acceptable<sup>6</sup> to my brother.

## SECTION VI.

## GENITIVE.

393. The Genitive in its primary meaning denotes  
*source or cause*; but, in its general use, it corresponds to  
 the English Objective with *of*, and expresses various ad-  
 jective relations.

## GENITIVE WITH NOUNS.

## RULE XVI.—Genitive.

395. Any Noun, not an Appositive, qualifying the  
 meaning of another noun, is put in the Genitive:

<sup>1</sup> Dative, according to Rule XIV.

<sup>2</sup> Accusative. See Rule V.

<sup>3</sup> Appositive, in agreement with *Saguntum*. See Rule II.

<sup>4</sup> Dative with *amicam*. See Rule XIV.

<sup>5</sup> *Amicam* agrees with *civitatem*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>6</sup> See 162.

Cātōnis<sup>1</sup> ōrātiōnes, *Cato's orations*. Cic. Castra hostium, *The camp of the enemy*. Liv. Mors Hāmilcāris, *The death of Hamilcar*. Liv. See 363.

## EXERCISE LIX.

## I. Vocabulary.

Commūnis, ē,	common.
Conscientiā, ae, f.	consciousness.
Dulcis, ē,	sweet, pleasant.
Hōnōr, hōnōris, m.	honor.
Orbis, orbis, m.	circle, world.
Orbis terrārū, <sup>2</sup>	the world. .
Parvū, ū, ūm,	small.
Principiū, ii, n.	beginning.
Rectū, i, n.	rectitude, right.
Sōcrātēs, is, m.	Socrates, Athenian philosopher.

## II. Translate into English.

1. *Iustitia virtutum*<sup>3</sup> regina est. 2. *Sapientia est mater omnium bonarum artium*. 3. *Socrātes parens philosophiae* fuit. 4. *Virtus veri honoris*<sup>4</sup> mater est. 5. *Patria communis*<sup>5</sup> est omnium nostrum<sup>6</sup> parens. 6. *Roma orbis*<sup>7</sup> terrarum caput fuit. 7. *Omnium rerum principia parva sunt*. 8. *Conscientia recti est praemium virtutis dulcissimum*.

<sup>1</sup> *Cātōnis* qualifies *ōrātiōnes*, and is in the Genitive, in accordance with the Rule.

<sup>2</sup> Literally *the circle of lands*.

<sup>3</sup> Genitive, depending upon *regina*. Rule XVI.

<sup>4</sup> Genitive, depending upon *mater*.

<sup>5</sup> *Communis* agrees with *parens*. See Rule XXXIII. p. 32.

<sup>6</sup> Genitive, depending upon *parens*.

<sup>7</sup> *Orbis* depends upon *caput*, and *terrarum* upon *orbis*.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. The orations of *Cicero* are praised.
2. The courage of the soldiers saved the city.
3. The crown of the king was golden.
4. The sword of the general was beautiful.
5. The son of the consul violated the laws of the state.
6. The citizens will observe the laws of the state.

## GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES.

## RULE XVII.—Genitive.

399. Many Adjectives take a Genitive to complete their meaning :

*Avidus laudis*,<sup>1</sup> *Desirous of praise*. Cic. *Otīi cūpidus*, *Desirous of leisure*. Liv. *Amans sui virtus*, *Virtue fond of itself*. Cic. *Efficiens vōluptātis*, *Productive of pleasure*. Cic. *Glōriæ mēmor*, *Mindful of glory*. Liv.

1. FORCE OF THIS GENITIVE.—The genitive here retains its usual force,—*of*, *in respect of*,—and may be used after adjectives which admit this relation.

2. ADJECTIVES WITH THE GENITIVE.—The most common are

1) Verbals in **ax**, and participles in **ans** and **ens** used adjectively.

2) Adjectives denoting *desire*, *knowledge*, *skill*, *recollection*, *participation*, *mastery*, *fulness*, and their contraries.

## EXERCISE LX.

I. *Vocabulary.*

*Amans*, *āmantis*,

*loving*, *fond of*.

*Avidūs*, *ā*, *ūm*,

*desirous of*, *eager for*.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Laudis* completes the meaning of *avidus*; *desirous* (of what?) of *praise*. It is in the Genitive, by this Rule. In the same way, *otīi* completes the meaning of *cūpidus*; *sui*, of *amans*; *vōluptātis*, of *efficiens*; and *glōriæ*, of *mēmor*.

Certāmen, certāminis, <i>n.</i>	contest, strife, battle.
Cūpidūs, ū, ūm,	desirous of.
Fons, fontis, <i>m.</i>	fountain.
Laus, laudis, <i>f.</i>	praise.
Nōvītās, nōvītātis, <i>f.</i>	novelty.
Pēritūs, ū, ūm,	skilled in.
Piscis, piscis, <i>m.</i>	fish.
Plēnūs, ū, ūm,	full.
Vōluptās, vōluptātis, <i>f.</i>	pleasure.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Romāni avidi *gloriae*<sup>1</sup> fuērunt. 2. Homīnes *novitātis* avidi sunt. 3. Numa *pacis*<sup>1</sup> erat amantissimus.<sup>2</sup> 4. *Patriae* amantissimi sumus. 5. Consul *gloriae* cupidus erat. 6. Cicēro *gloriae* cupidissimus<sup>2</sup> fuit. 7. Milites erant avidissimi certāminis. 8. Fons piscium plenissimus est. 9. Athenienses belli navālis peritissimi fuērunt.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Boys are fond of *praise*. 2. Are you not fond of *praise*? 3. We are fond of *praise*. 4. Were not the Athenians fond of *pleasure*? 5. They were always fond of *pleasure*. 6. They are desirous of *glory*. 7. Are you not desirous of a *victory*? 8. We are desirous of a *victory*.

## SECTION VII.

### ABLATIVE.

412. The Ablative in its primary meaning is closely related to the Genitive; but, in its general use, it corresponds to the English Objective with *from*, *by*, *in*, *with*, and expresses various adverbial relations. It is accordingly used with Verbs and Adjectives; while the Genitive, as the case of adjective relations, is most common with Nouns. See 393.

<sup>1</sup> Genitive, completing the meaning of the adjective. See Rule XVII.

<sup>2</sup> See 162.



†

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, MANNER, MEANS.

## RULE XXI.—Cause, Manner, Means.

414. Cause, Manner, and Means<sup>1</sup> are denoted by the Ablative :

*Ars utilitāte laudātur, An art is praised because of its usefulness.* Cic. *Glōriā dūcitur, He is led by glory.* Cic. *Duobus modis fit, It is done in two ways.* Cic. *Sol omnia luce collustrat, The sun illumines all things with its light.* Cic. *Apri dentibus se tūtantur, Boars defend themselves with their tusks.* Cic. *Aeger erat vulneribus, He was ill in consequence of his wounds.* Nep. *Laetus sorte tua, Pleased with your lot.* Hor.

1. APPLICATION OF RULE.—This Ablative is of very frequent occurrence, and is used both with verbs and adjectives.

2. ABLATIVE OF CAUSE.—This designates that *by which, by reason of which, because of which, in accordance with which*, any thing is or is done.

3. ABLATIVE OF MANNER.—This Ablative is regularly accompanied by some modifier, or by the preposition *cum* ; but a few ablatives, chiefly those signifying *manner*, — *mōre, ordine, ratiōne*, etc., — occur without such accompaniment :

*Vi summa, With the greatest violence.* Nep. *Mōre Persarum, In the manner of the Persians.* Nep. *Cum silentio audire, To hear in silence.* Liv. *Id ordine facere, To do it in order, or properly.* Cic.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is not always possible to distinguish between *Cause, Manner, and Means*. Sometimes the same Ablative may involve both *Cause and Means*, or both *Means and Manner*. Still the pupil should be taught to determine in each instance, as far as possible, what is the real force of the Ablative. Thus in the examples, *utilitāte* denotes cause, because of its usefulness ; *glōriā*, means, with perhaps the accessory notion of cause ; *modis*, manner ; *luce*, means ; *dentibus*, means ; *vulneribus*, cause, with perhaps the accessory notion of means ; and *sorte*, cause and means.

4. ABLATIVE OF MEANS. — This includes the *Instrument* and all other *Means* employed.

5. ABLATIVE OF AGENT. — This designates the Person by whom any thing is done as a voluntary agent, and takes the preposition *a* or *ab*:

*Occisus est a Thēbānis, He was slain by the Thebans.*<sup>1</sup> *Nep.*

## EXERCISE LXI.

### I. Vocabulary.

Mūnus, mūnēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>reward, gift.</i>
Nātūrā, <i>ae, f.</i>	<i>nature.</i>
Pellis, pellis, <i>f.</i>	<i>skin, hide.</i>
Quōtidianūs, <i>ā, ūm,</i>	<i>daily.</i>
Scythae, <i>ārum, m. plur.</i>	<i>Scythians.</i>
Triumphō, <i>ārē, āvi, ātūm,</i>	<i>to triumph.</i>
Usus, <i>ūs, m.</i>	<i>use.</i>
Vestiō, <i>irē, ivi, itūm,</i>	<i>to clothe.</i>

### II. Translate into English.

1. Consul *virtūte*<sup>2</sup> laudatus est. 2. Urbs *naturā*<sup>3</sup> munita erat. 3. Haec urbs *arte* muniētur. 4. *Muneribus*<sup>4</sup> delectāmur. 5. Roma Camilli virtute est servata. 6. Camillus hostes magno proelio superavit. 7. Scipio patrem singulari virtute servavit. 8. Scipio ingenti gloriā<sup>5</sup> triumphavit.<sup>5</sup> 9. Scythae corpōra pellibus vestiēbant. †

<sup>1</sup> By comparing this example with those under the Rule, the second for instance, it will be seen that the Latin construction distinguishes the person by whom any thing is done from the means by which it is done, designating the former by the Ablative with *a* or *ab* (*a Thēbānis*, by the Thebans), and the latter by the Ablative without a preposition; *gloriā*, by glory.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Cause, according to Rule XXI.

<sup>3</sup> Ablative of Means.

<sup>4</sup> Ablative of Manner.

<sup>5</sup> The privilege of entering Rome in grand triumphal procession was sometimes awarded to eminent Roman generals as they returned from victory. *Triumphavit* here refers to such a triumph.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Are not the fields adorned *with flowers*?<sup>1</sup> 2. The fields are adorned *with* beautiful *flowers*. 3. Have you not strengthened your memory *by use*? 4. I have strengthened my memory by daily use. 5. You will be praised for (because of) your diligence.<sup>2</sup> 6. Our pupils have been praised for their diligence. 7. The general saved the city by his valor. 8. Rome was saved by the valor of the Roman soldiers.

## ABLATIVES WITH COMPARATIVES.

## RULE XXIII.—Ablative with Comparatives.

417. Comparatives without QUAM are followed by the Ablative:

Nihil est amabilius virtute,<sup>3</sup> *Nothing is more lovely than virtue.* Cic.  
Quid est melius bonitate,<sup>3</sup> *What is better than goodness?* Cic.

1. COMPARATIVES WITH QUAM<sup>4</sup> are followed by the Nominative, or by the case of the corresponding noun before them:

Hibernia minor quam Britannia existimatur, *Hibernia is considered smaller than Britannia.* Caes. Agris quam urbi<sup>5</sup> terribilior, *More terrible to the country than to the city.* Liv.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of Means. Rule XXI.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Cause.

<sup>3</sup> *Virtute* and *bonitate* are both in the Ablative, by this Rule; the former after the comparative *amabilius*, and the latter after the comparative *melius*.

<sup>4</sup> *Quam* is a conjunction, meaning *than*. Conjunctions are mere connectives, used to connect words or clauses.

<sup>5</sup> *Agris* and *urbi*, the one *before* and the other *after quam*, are both in the same construction, in the Dative, depending upon *terribilior* according to Rule XIV. 391.

## EXERCISE LXII.

## I. Vocabulary.

Argentūm, i, n.	silver.
Avāritiā ae. f.	avarice.
Bōnitās, bōnitātis, f.	goodness, excellence.
Elōquens, elōquentis,	eloquent.
Ferrūm, i, n.	iron.
Foediū, ā, ūm,	detestable.
Prētiōsū, ā, ūm,	valuable.
Quām, conj.	than.
Scientiā, ae, f.	knowledge.
Turris, turris, f.	tower.

## II. Translate into English.

1. Virtus mihi <sup>1</sup> *gloriā* <sup>2</sup> est carior. 2. Patria mihi *virtū* <sup>3</sup> meā est carior. 3. Quid est jucundius *amicitiā*? 4. Quid foedius est *avaritiā*? 5. Aurum argento pretiosius est. 6. Anīmus corpore est nobilior. 7. Turris altior erat quam murus.<sup>4</sup> 8. Quid multitudīni <sup>1</sup> *gratius* quam libertas est? 9. Pater tuus est sapientior quam tu.<sup>4</sup> 10. Quis eloquentior fuit quam Demosthēnes?

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Silver is more valuable than *iron*.<sup>2</sup> 2. Virtue is more valuable than *gold*. 3. Wisdom is more valuable than *money*. 4. Will not wisdom be more useful to you than gold? 5. Wisdom will be more useful to me than gold. 6. Goodness is more valuable than <sup>5</sup> knowledge. 7. Good-

<sup>1</sup> See Rule XIV. 391.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative, depending upon the comparative without *quam*, according to Rule XXIII.

<sup>3</sup> In the same case as *turris*, the corresponding noun before *quam*. It is the subject of *erat* understood.

<sup>4</sup> Subject of *es* understood.

<sup>5</sup> In this and the following examples use *quam*, according to 417, 1.

ness is dearer to us than glory. 8. The Romans were braver than the Gauls. 9. The soldiers were braver than the general.

#### ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

420. This Ablative designates

I. The PLACE IN WHICH any thing is or is done:

II. The PLACE FROM WHICH any thing proceeds, including *Source* and *Separation*.

#### RULE XXVI.—Ablative of Place.

421. I. The PLACE IN WHICH and the PLACE FROM WHICH are generally denoted by the Ablative with a Preposition. But

II. NAMES OF TOWNS drop the Preposition, and in the Singular of the First and Second declensions designate the PLACE IN WHICH by the Genitive:

I. Hannibal in Italiā<sup>1</sup> fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy*. Nep. In nostris castris, *In our camps*. Caes. In Appiā viā, *On the Appian Way*. Cic. Ab urbe proficiscitur, *He departs from the city*. Caes. Ex Africā, *From Africa*. Liv.

II. Athēnis<sup>2</sup> fuit, *He was at Athens*. Cic. Bābylōne mortuus est, *He died at Babylon*. Cic. Fūgit Cōrintho, *He fled from Corinth*. Cic. Rōmae<sup>2</sup> fuit, *He was at Rome*. Cic.

#### EXERCISE LXIII.

##### I. Vocabulary.

A, āb, prep. with abl.	from, by.
Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, f.	Babylon, the city of.

<sup>1</sup> In Italiā, in castris, and in viā designate the PLACE IN WHICH; while ab urbe and ex Africā designate the PLACE FROM WHICH. They are in the Ablative with a preposition.

<sup>2</sup> Athēnis, Bābylōne, and Cōrintho, being names of towns, omit the preposition; while Rōmae, also the name of a town, is in the Genitive, as it is in the Singular of the First declension.

Corinthūs, i, <i>f.</i>	<i>Corinth</i> , city in Greece.
Diōnysiūs, ii, <i>m.</i>	<i>Dionysius</i> , tyrant of Syracuse.
Hābitō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to dwell, reside.</i>
Hortūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>garden.</i>
Laetitiā, ae, <i>f.</i>	<i>joy.</i>
Lūcūs, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>grove.</i>
Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>region, territory.</i>
Sēnātor, sēnātoris, <i>m.</i>	<i>senator.</i>
Trigintā,	<i>thirty.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Hannibal in *Hispaniā*<sup>1</sup> fuit. 2. Lātīnus in *Italiā* regnāvit. 3. Lātīnus in illis regionibus regnābat. 4. Cives ab urbe<sup>2</sup> fugiebant. 5. Themistōcles e Graeciā fugit. 6. Sex menses<sup>3</sup> *Athēnis*<sup>4</sup> fui. 7. Alexander *Babylōne* erat. 8. Dionysius tyrannus Syracūsīs fugit. 9. Themistōcles *Athēnis* fugit. 10. *Athēnis* habitābat. 11. Romūlus *Romae*<sup>5</sup> regnāvit. 12. *Romae* ingens laetitia fuit.

## III. Translate into Latin.

1. Is not your father in *Italy*? 2. My father is in *Greece*. 3. Were you not in *Greece*? 4. We resided in *Greece* three years. 5. Who is in the garden? 6. My brother is in the garden. 7. The pupils were walking in the fields. 8. The nightingales are singing in the groves. 9. Your father resided many years at *Athens*. 10. Did he not reside at *Carthage*? 11. He resided four years at *Carthage*. 12. Did you not receive my letter at *Rome*? 13. I received your letter at *Corinth*.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of PLACE IN WHICH, with the preposition *in*. See Rule XXXII.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of PLACE FROM WHICH, with the preposition *ab*.

<sup>3</sup> See Rule VIII.

<sup>4</sup> In the Ablative, without a preposition, because it is the name of a town.

<sup>5</sup> In the Genitive, because it is the name of a town, and is in the Singular of the First declension.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

## RULE XXVIII.—Time.

426. The TIME of an Action is denoted by the Ablative:

Octōgēsīmo anno<sup>1</sup> est mortuus, *He died in his eightieth year.* Cic. Vēre convēnere, *They assembled in the spring.* Liv. Nātālī die suo, *On his birth-day.* Nep. Hieme et aestate, *In winter and summer.* Cic.

1. DESIGNATIONS OF TIME.—Any word so used as to involve the time of an action or event may be put in the ablative: *bello*, in the time of war; *pugnā*, in the time of battle; *lūdis*, at the time of the games; *mēmōriā*, in memory, i.e., in the time of one's recollection.

## EXERCISE LXIV.

## I. Vocabulary.

Brūtus, i, m.	<i>Brutus, a Roman patriot.</i>
Dēflāgrō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to burn, be consumed.</i>
Diānā, ae, f.	<i>Diana, a goddess.</i>
Ephēsīus, ō, ūm,	<i>Ephesian, of Ephesus.</i>
Hiems, hiēmis, f.	<i>winter.</i>
Nātālīs, ē,	<i>belonging to one's birth, natal.</i>
Nātālīs diēs,	<i>birth-day.</i>
Pompēiūs, ii, m.	<i>Pompey, Roman general.</i>
Persae, ārum, m. plur.	<i>Persians.</i>
Scribō, scribēre, scripsi, scriptūm,	<i>to write.</i>
Tempūs, tempōris, n.	<i>time.</i>

## II. Translate into English.

1. Nātālī die<sup>2</sup> tuo scripsisti epistōlam. 2. Eōdem die epistōlam tuam accēpi.<sup>3</sup> 3. Pompēius urbem tertio mense

<sup>1</sup> Anno, vere, die, hieme, and aestate are all in the Ablative, by this Rule.

<sup>2</sup> Ablative of Time, according to Rule XXVIII.

<sup>3</sup> From accipio.

cepit. 4. Eodem *die* Persae superāti sunt. 5. Pompēius illo tempore miles fuit. 6. Illo anno Dianae Ephesiae templum deflagravit. 7. Occāsu solis hostes fugāti sunt. 8. Illo die Brutus patriam servāvit.

### III. Translate into Latin.

1. Were you not in Athens<sup>1</sup> *at that time*? 2. We were at Corinth<sup>2</sup> *at that time*. 3. Do you not reside in the city<sup>1</sup> *in winter*? 4. We reside in this beautiful city in the winter. 5. The city was taken at sunset. 6. Were you not in the city at that hour? 7. I was in the city at that time. 8. Were you not in Rome<sup>3</sup> on your birth-day? 9. I was in that city on my birth-day.

## SECTION VIII.

### CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS.

#### RULE XXXII.—Cases with Prepositions.

432. The Accusative and Ablative may be used with Prepositions:

Ad amicum<sup>3</sup> scripsi, *I have written to a friend*. Cic. In cūriam, *Into the senate-house*. Liv. In Italiā, *In Italy*. Nep. Pro castris, *Before the camp*.

433. The ACCUSATIVE is used with

Ad, adversus (adversum), ante, apud, circa, circum, circiter, cis, citra, contra, erga, extra, infra, inter, intra, juxta, ob, pēnes, per, pōne, post, praeter, prōpe, propter, sēcundum, supra, trans, ultra, versus:

Ad urbem, *To the city*. Cic. Adversus deos, *Toward the gods*. Cic.

434. The ABLATIVE is used with

A or ab (abs),	absque,	cōram,	cum,	de,
e or ex,	prae,	pro,	sine,	tēnus:

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of Place. See Rule XXVI.

<sup>2</sup> Genitive of Place. See Rule XXVI. II.

<sup>3</sup> The Accusative amicum is here used with the preposition *ad*; *curiam*, with *in*; the Ablative *Italiā*, with *in*. See 435, 1.



Ab urbe, *From the city.* Caes. Cōram conventu, *In the presence of the assembly.* Nep.

435. The ACCUSATIVE or ABLATIVE is used with

In, sub, subter, super:

In Asiam prōfūgit, *He fled into Asia.* Cic. Hannībal in Italiā fuit, *Hannibal was in Italy.* Nep.

1. *In* and *Sub* take the Accusative in answer to the question *whither*, the Ablative in answer to *where*: In Asiam, (*whither?*) *into Asia*; In Italiā, (*where?*) *in Italy*.

EXERCISE LXV.

I. *Vocabulary.*

Adversūs, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>against.</i>
Dimicō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to fight.</i>
Për, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<i>of, through.</i>
Prospère, <i>adv.</i>	<i>successfully.</i>
Prōvocō, āre, āvi, ātūm,	<i>to challenge.</i>

II. *Translate into English.*

1. Laçedæmonii hostes ad *proelium* provocābant. 2. Scipio contra *Hannōnem*, ducem Carthaginiensium, prospère pugnat. 3. Caesar adversus Pompēium dimicāvit. 4. Veritas per se<sup>1</sup> mihi grata est. 5. Virtus per se laudabilis est. 6. Persae a *Graecis*<sup>2</sup> superāti sunt. 7. Cicëro de *amicitiā* scripsit.

III. *Translate into Latin.*

1. Will not the army be led back to *the city*? 2. It has been led back to *the city*. 3. Will you not write to me? 4. I will write to you. 5. Friendship is valuable of itself. 6. Have you not received five letters from *me*? 7. I have received four letters from *you*. 8. I have received two letters from your brother.

<sup>1</sup> *Per se*, literally *through itself*: render *in itself* or *of itself*.

<sup>2</sup> *A Graecis*, by the Greeks. See 414, 5.

## SUGGESTIONS TO THE LEARNER.

---

I. THE preparation of a Reading Lesson in Latin involves,

1. A knowledge of the Meaning of the Latin.
2. A knowledge of the Structure of the Latin Sentences.
3. A translation into English.

### MEANING OF THE LATIN.

II. Remember that almost every inflected word in a Latin sentence requires the use of both the Dictionary and the Grammar to ascertain its meaning.

The Dictionary gives the meaning of the word, without reference to its Grammatical properties of *case, number, mood, tense*, etc.; and the Grammar, the meaning of the endings which mark these properties. The Dictionary will give the meaning of *mensa*, a table, but not of *mensarum*, of tables: the Grammar alone will give the force of the ending *arum*.

III. Make yourself so familiar with all the endings of inflection, with their exact form and force, whether in declension or conjugation, that you will not only readily distinguish the different parts of speech from each other, but also the different forms of the same word, with their exact and distinctive force.

IV. In taking up a Latin sentence,

1. Notice carefully the endings of the several words, and thus determine which words are *nouns*, which *verbs*, etc.
2. Observe the force of each ending, and thus determine *case, number, voice, mood, tense*, etc.

This will be found to be a very important step toward the mastery of the sentence. By this means, you will discover not only the relation of the words to each other, but also an important part of their meaning, — that which they derive from their endings.

V. The key to the meaning of any simple sentence (345, I.) will be found in the simple subject and predicate; i.e., in the Nominative and its Verb. Hence, in looking out the sentence, observe the following order. Take

1. The Subject, or Nominative.

The ending will, in most instances, enable you to distinguish this from all other words, except the adjectives which agree with it. These may be looked out at the same time with the subject.

Sometimes the subject is not expressed, but only implied, in the ending of the verb. It may then be readily supplied, as it is always a pronoun of such person and number as the verb indicates: as, *audio*, I hear, the ending *to* showing that the subject is *ego*; *auditis*, you hear, the ending *itis* showing that the subject is *vos*.

2. The Verb, with Predicate Noun or Adjective, if any.

This will be readily known by the ending. Now, combining this with the Subject, you will have an outline of the sentence. All the other words must now be associated with these two parts.

3. The Modifiers of the Subject; i.e., adjectives agreeing with it, nominatives in apposition with it, genitives dependent upon it, etc.

But perhaps some of these have already been looked out in the attempt to ascertain the subject.

In looking out these words, bear in mind the meaning of the subject to which they belong. This will greatly aid you in selecting from the dictionary the true meaning in the passage before you.

4. The Modifiers of the Verb, i.e. (1) Oblique cases, accusatives, datives, etc., dependent upon it, and (2) Adverbs qualifying it.

Bear in mind all the while the force of the case and the meaning of the verb, that you may be able to select for each word the true meaning in the passage before you.

VI. In complex and compound sentences (345, II., III.), discover first the connectives which unite the several members, and then proceed with each member as with a simple sentence.

VII. In the use of Dictionary and Vocabulary, remember that you are not to look for the particular form which occurs in the sentence, but for the Nom. Sing. of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, and for the First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. of verbs. Therefore,

1. In Pronouns, make yourself so familiar with their declension, that any oblique case will at once suggest the Nom. Sing.

If *vobis* occurs, you must remember that the Nom. Sing. is *tu*.

2. In Nouns and Adjectives, make yourself so familiar with the case-endings, that you will be able to drop that of the given case, and substitute for it that of the Nom. Sing.

Thus *mensibus*; stem *mens*, Nom. Sing. *mensis*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *urbem*, *urb*, *urbs*.

3. In Verbs, change the ending of the given form into that of the First Pers. Sing. of the Pres. Indic. Act.

Thus *amābat*; stem *am*, First Pers. Sing. Pres. Indic. Act. *amo*, which you will find in the Vocabulary. So *amaverunt*; First Pers. Perf. *amāvi*, Perf. stem *amav*, Verb stem *am*; *amo*.

To illustrate the steps recommended in the preceding suggestions, we add the following

### *Model.*

VIII. Themistōcles imperātor servitūte totam Graeciam liberāvit.

1. Without knowing the meaning of the words, you will discover from their *forms*,

1) That *Themistōcles* and *imperātor* are probably nouns in the Nom. Sing.

2) That *servitūte* is a noun in the Abl. Sing.

3) That *totam* and *Graeciam* are either nouns or adjectives in the Accus. Sing.

4) That *liberāvit* is a verb in the Act. voice, Indic. mood, Perf. tense, Third Person, Singular number.

2. Now, turning to the Vocabulary for the meaning of the words, you will learn,

1) That *Themistōcles* is the name of an eminent Athenian general: **THEMISTOCLES**.

2) That *libēro*, for which you must look, not for *liberāvit*, means *to liberate*: **LIBERATED**.

Themistocles liberated.

3) That *imperātor* means *commander*: **THE COMMANDER**.

Themistocles the commander liberated.

4) That *Graeciam* is the name of a country: **GREECE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated Greece.

5) That *totus* means *the whole, all*: **ALL**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece.

6) That *servitūs* means *servitude*: **FROM SERVITUDE**.

Themistocles the commander liberated all Greece from servitude.

#### STRUCTURE OF THE LATIN SENTENCE.

IX. The structure of a sentence is best shown by *analyzing*<sup>1</sup> it, and by *parsing* the words which compose it.

#### *Parsing.*

XVII.<sup>2</sup> In parsing a word,

1. Name the Part of Speech to which it belongs.
2. Inflect<sup>3</sup> it, if capable of inflection.
3. Give its gender, number, case, voice, mood, tense, person, etc.<sup>4</sup>
4. Give its Syntax, and the Rule for it.<sup>5</sup>

#### TRANSLATION.

XIX. In translating, render as literally as possible without doing violence to the English.

<sup>1</sup> It has not been thought advisable to enter upon the subject of *analysis* at this early stage of the course. That will be presented in the Reader, which follows this work.

<sup>2</sup> These suggestions are taken, without change, from the Reader. Accordingly, the numerals are made to correspond to those in that work.

<sup>3</sup> Inflect; i.e., decline, compare, or conjugate.

<sup>4</sup> That is, such of these properties as it possesses.

<sup>5</sup> For Models for Parsing, see pp. 16, 22, 24, 33, 55, 57, 59, 66, 71, and 73.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

*For Explanation of Abbreviations and References, see p. ix.*

<p style="text-align: center;">A.</p> <p>A, ab, <i>prep. with abl. From, by.</i></p> <p>Accipio, accipere, accipi, acceptum. <i>To receive.</i></p> <p>Acër, acris, acere. <i>Sharp, severe, valiant.</i></p> <p>Acies, aciei, <i>f. Order of battle, battle-array, army.</i></p> <p>Ad, <i>prep. with acc. To, towards, near.</i></p> <p>Administro, are, avi, atum. <i>To administer, manage.</i></p> <p>Admoneo, admonere, admonui, admonitum. <i>To admonish.</i></p> <p>Adventus, us, <i>m. Arrival, approach.</i></p> <p>Adversus, <i>prep. with acc. Against.</i></p> <p>Aedifico, are, avi, atum. <i>To build.</i></p> <p>Aestas, aestatis, <i>f. Summer.</i></p> <p>Agër, agri, <i>m. Field, land.</i></p> <p>Agger, aggeris, <i>m. Mound, rampart.</i></p> <p>Agis, Agidis, <i>m. Agis, a king of Sparta.</i></p> <p>Albanus, us, <i>um. Alban.</i></p> <p>Alexander, Alexandri, <i>m. Alexander, the Great.</i></p> <p>Aliquis, aliquis, aliquis or aliquod. <i>Some, some one. See 191.</i></p> <p>Altus, us, <i>um. High, lofty.</i></p> <p>Amans, amantis. <i>Loving, fond of.</i></p>	<p>Ambulo, are, avi, atum. <i>To walk.</i></p> <p>Amicitia, ae, <i>f. Friendship.</i></p> <p>Amicus, us, <i>um. Friendly.</i></p> <p>Amicus, i, <i>m. Friend.</i></p> <p>Amnis, amnis, <i>m. River.</i></p> <p>Amor, are, avi, atum. <i>To love.</i></p> <p>Amor, amoris, <i>m. Love.</i></p> <p>Amplio, are, avi, atum. <i>To enlarge.</i></p> <p>Ancus, i, <i>m. Ancus, a Roman king.</i></p> <p>Animal, animalis, <i>n. Animal.</i></p> <p>Animus, i, <i>m. Soul, mind, passion, disposition.</i></p> <p>Annulus, i, <i>m. Ring.</i></p> <p>Annus, i, <i>m. Year.</i></p> <p>Ante, <i>prep. with acc. Before.</i></p> <p>Antiquus, us, <i>um. Ancient.</i></p> <p>Apis, apis, <i>f. Bee.</i></p> <p>Appello, are, avi, atum. <i>To call.</i></p> <p>Appetens, appetentis. <i>Desiring, striving for.</i></p> <p>Apud, <i>prep. with acc. In the presence of, near, before, among.</i></p> <p>Apulia, ae, <i>f. Apulia, a country in Italy.</i></p> <p>Arabs, Arabis, <i>m and f. Arab, an Arab.</i></p> <p>Arcte, <i>adv. Closely, soundly.</i></p> <p>Argentum, i, <i>n. Silver.</i></p> <p>Arvo, are, arvi, aratum. <i>To plough.</i></p>
--	--

Arrōgantiā, ae, *f.* *Arrogance.*  
 Ars, artīs, *f.* *Art, skill.*  
 Artāxerxēs, is, *m.* *Artaxerxes, a Persian king.*  
 Arx, arcis, *f.* *Citadel, fortress.*  
 Athēnae, ārtūm, *f. plur.* *Athens, the capital of Attica.*  
 Athēniensis, ē, *Athenian.*  
 Athēniensis, is, *m. and f.* *Athenian, an Athenian.*  
 Atticūs, ī, *m.* *Atticus, a Roman name.*  
 Audiō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To hear.*  
 Auditōr, auditōris, *m.* *Hearer, auditor.*  
 Aureūs, ā, ūm. *Golden.*  
 Aurūm, ī, *n.* *Gold.*  
 Avāritiā, ae, *f.* *Avarice.*  
 Avīdūs, ā, ūm. *Desirous of, eager for.*  
 Avis, avis, *f.* *Bird.*

## B.

Bābylōn, Bābylōnis, *f.* *Babylon, the celebrated capital of the Assyrian Empire, on the banks of the Euphrates.*  
 Beātūs, ā, ūm. *Happy, blessed.*  
 Bellūm, ī, *n.* *War, warfare.*  
 Bēnē, adv. *Well.*  
 Bēnignē, adv. *Kindly.*  
 Bōnitās, bōnitātis, *f.* *Goodness, excellence.*  
 Bōnūs, ā, ūm. *Good.*  
 Brēvis, ē. *Short, brief.*  
 Brūtūs, ī, *m.* *Brutus, a celebrated Roman patriot.*

## C.

Caesār, Caesāris, *m.* *Cesar, a celebrated Roman commander.*  
 Cāiūs, ii, *m.* *Caius, a proper name.*

Cāmillus, ī, *m.* *Camillus, a Roman general.*  
 Campūs, ī, *m.* *Plain.*  
 Cānis, cānis, *m. and f.* *Dog.*  
 Cantō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To sing.*  
 Cantūs, ūs, *m.* *Singing, song.*  
 Cāpiō, cāpērē, cēpi, captūm. *To take, capture.*  
 Cāpūt, cāpitūs, *n.* *Head, capital.*  
 Carmēn, carminis, *n.* *Song, poem, verse.*  
 Carthāgīniensis, ē. *Carthaginian.*  
 Carthāgīniensis, is, *m. and f.* *A Carthaginian.*  
 Carthāgō, Carthāgīnis, *f.* *Carthage, a city of Northern Africa.*  
 Carthāgō Nōvā. *New Carthage, Carthago, a city of Spain.*  
 Cārūs, ā, ūm. *Dear.*  
 Cātō, Cātōnis, *m.* *Cato, a distinguished Roman.*  
 Centūm. *One hundred. See 175, 2.*  
 Certāmen, certāminis, *n.* *Contest, strife, battle.*  
 Cībūs, ī, *m.* *Food.*  
 Cīcērō, Cīcērōnis, *m.* *Cicero, the celebrated Roman orator.*  
 Cīvīlis, ē. *Civil.*  
 Cīvīs, cīvīs, *m. and f.* *Citizen.*  
 Cīvītās, civitātis, *f.* *State, city.*  
 Clārūs, ā, ūm. *Renowned, distinguished, illustrious.*  
 Classīs, classis, *f.* *Fleet, navy.*  
 Coerceō, coercērē, coercui, coercitūm. *To check.*  
 Cōlō, cōlērē, cōlui, cultūm. *To practise, cultivate.*  
 Commūnis, ē. *Common.*  
 Condemnō, arē, āvi, ātūm. *To condemn.*  
 Cōndītōr, condītōris, *m.* *Founder.*  
 Conjux, conjūgis, *m. and f.* *Wife, husband, spouse.*

Cōnōn, Cōnōnis, *m.* *Conon*, an Athenian general.  
 Conscientiā, *ae, f.* *Consciousness.*  
 Consiliū, *ii, n.* *Design, plan.*  
 Conspectus, *ūs, m.* *Sight, view, presence.*  
 Consul, consulis, *m.* *Consul.*  
 Contrā, *prep. with acc. Against, opposite to, contrary to.*  
 Convocō, *ārē, āvi, ātūm.* *To assemble, call together.*  
 Cōrīnthiūs, *i, f.* *Corinth*, city in Greece.  
 Cornēliūs, *ii, m.* *Cornelius*, a Roman name.  
 Cōrūnā, *ae, f.* *Crown.*  
 Corpūs, corpōris, *n.* *Body, person.*  
 Creō, *ārē, āvi, ātūm.* *To create, make, appoint, elect.*  
 Crūdēlis, *ē.* *Cruel.*  
 Crūdūs, *ā, ūm.* *Unripe.*  
 Culpō, *ārē, āvi, ātūm.* *To blame.*  
 Cūm, *prep. with abl. With.*  
 Cūpidūs, *ā, ūm.* *Desirous of.*  
 Cūrēs, Cūrītūm, *m. plur.* *Cures*, a Sabine town.  
 Custodiō, *irē, ivi, itūm.* *To guard.*  
 Custōs, custōdis, *m. and f.* *Keeper, guard.*

## D.

Dē, *prep. with abl. Concerning.*  
 Dēbeō, dēbērē, dēbui, dēbitūm. *To owe.*  
 Dēcēm. *Ten.* See 175.  
 Dēcimūs, *ā, ūm.* *Tenth.*  
 Dēfectiō, dēfectiōnis, *f.* *Eclipse.*  
 Dēflāgrō, *ārē, āvi, ātūm.* *To burn, be consumed.*  
 Dēlectō, *ārē, āvi, ātūm.* *To delight, please.*  
 Dēmārātis, *i, m.* *Demaratus*, a Corinthian.

Dēmōsthēnēs, *is, m.* *Demosthenes*, the celebrated Athenian orator.  
 Diānā, *ae, f.* *Diana*, the goddess of the chase.  
 Dicō, dicērē, dixi, dictūm. *To say, speak, tell.*  
 Diēs, diēi, *m.* *Day.* See 119, note.  
 Dilligens, dilligentis. *Diligent.*  
 Dilligentia, *ae, f.* *Diligence.*  
 Dimicō, *ārē, āvi, ātūm.* *To fight.*  
 Diōnysius, *ii, m.* *Dionysius*, tyrant of Syracuse.  
 Discipulus, *i, m.* *Pupil.*  
 Disertē, *adv.* *Clearly, eloquently.*  
 Displīcō, displīcērē, displīcui, displīctūm. *To displease.*  
 Divinūs, *ā, ūm.* *Divine.*  
 Dōlōr, dōlōris, *m.* *Pain, grief, suffering.*  
 Dōnō, *ārē, āvi, ātūm.* *To give, present.*  
 Dōnūm, *i, n.* *Gift.*  
 Dormiō, *irē, ivi, itūm.* *To sleep.*  
 Drācō, Drācōnis, *m.* *Draco*, an Athenian lawgiver.  
 Dūcenti, *ae, ā.* *Two hundred.*  
 Dūcō, dūcērē, duxi, ductūm. *To lead.*  
 Dulcis, *ē.* *Sweet, pleasant.*  
 Duō, *ae, ō.* *Two.* See 176.  
 Dūplīcō, *ārē, āvi, ātūm.* *To double, increase.*  
 Dux, dūcis, *m. and f.* *Leader, general.*

## E.

E, ex, *prep. with abl. From.*  
 Ebriētās, ebriētātis, *f.* *Drunkennes.*  
 Educō, educērē, eduxi, eductūm. *To lead forth, lead out.*  
 Effugiō, effugērē, effugi, effūgtūm. *To escape.*  
 Egō, mei. *I.* See 184.



Egrēgitus, ā, ūm. *Distinguished.*

Egrēgiē, adv. *Excellently.*

Elēphantus, i, m. *Elephant.*

Elōquens, elōquentis. *Eloquent.*

Elōquentiā, ae, f. *Eloquence.*

Ephēsītus, ā, ūm. *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*

Epirus, i, f. *Epirus, a country in Greece.*

Epistōlā, ae, f. *Letter.*

Erūdiō, irē, ivi, itum. *To instruct, refine, educate.*

Erūdītus, ā, ūm. *Learned, instructed in.*

Ex, prep. *with abl. From.*

Exerceō, exercere, exercui, exercitum. *To exercise, train.*

Exercitus, ūs, m. *Army.*

Expugno, are, avi, atum. *To take, take by storm.*

Exspecto, are, avi, atum. *To await, expect.*

Exsul, exsulis, m. and f. *Exile.*

### F.

Faciēs, faciēs, f. *Face, appearance.*

Ferrum, i, n. *Iron.*

Fertilis, ē. *Fertile.*

Fidelitas, fidelitatis, f. *Fidelity, faithfulness.*

Fides, fidei, f. *Faith, fidelity.*

Fidus, ā, ūm. *Faithful.*

Filia, ae, f. *Daughter.*

Filius, ii, m. *Son.*

Finio, ire, ivi, itum. *To finish, bring to a close.*

Finis, finis, m. *Limit, territory.*

Firmo, are, avi, atum. *To strengthen, confirm.*

Flaminius, ii, m. *Flaminius, a Roman general.*

Flōs, flōris, m. *Flower.*

Foedus, ā, ūm. *Detestable.*

Fons, fontis, m. *Fountain.*

Fortis, ē. *Brave.*

Fortiter, adv. *Bravely.*

Fortitudo, fortitudinis, f. *Bravery, fortitude.*

Fossa, ae, f. *Ditch, moat.*

Frater, fratris, m. *Brother.*

Fructus, ūs, m. *Fruit, produce, income.*

Frumentum, i, n. *Corn, grain.*

Fuga, ae, f. *Flight.*

Fugio, fugere, fugi, fugitum. *To flee, fly, run away.*

Fugio, are, avi, atum. *To rout, drive away.*

Funestus, ā, ūm. *Destructive.*

Furor, furoris, m. *Madness, insanity.*

### G.

Gallus, i, m. *Gallus, a proper name.*

Gallus, i, m. *Gaul, a Gaul, an inhabitant of ancient Gaul, embracing modern France.*

Gemma, ae, f. *Gem.*

Genēr, generi, m. *Son-in-law.*

Gens, gentis, f. *Race.*

Germania, ae, f. *Germany.*

Gladius, ii, m. *Sword.*

Globosus, ā, ūm. *Spherical.*

Glōria, ae, f. *Glory.*

Graecia, ae, f. *Greece.*

Graecus, ā, ūm. *Grecian, Greek.*

Graecus, i, m. *Greek, a Greek.*

Gratia, ae, f. *Favor, gratitude, thanks.*

Grātus, ā, ūm. *Acceptable, pleasing.*

Grex, gregis, m. *Herd, flock.*

### H.

Habeo, habere, habui, habitum. *To have, hold.*

Habito, are, avi, atum. *To dwell, reside.*

Hannibāl, Hannibālīs, *m.* *Hannibal*, a celebrated Carthaginian general.

Hannō, Hannōnīs, *m.* *Hanno*, a Carthaginian general.

Hastā, *ae, f.* *Spear.*

Hic, haec, hōc. *This.*

Hiems, hiēmīs, *f.* *Winter.*

Hirundō, hirundīnīs, *f.* *Swallow.*

Hispāniā, *ae, f.* *Spain.*

Hispānūs, *i, m.* *A Spaniard.*

Hōmērūs, *i, m.* *Homer*, the celebrated Grecian poet.

Hōmō, hōmīnīs, *m.* *Man.*

Hōnōr, hōnōrīs, *m.* *Honor.*

Hōrā, *ae, f.* *Hour.*

Hostīs, hostīs, *m. and f.* *Enemy.*

## I.

Idēm, eadēm, idēm. *Same, the same.* See 186.

Ignōrō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To be ignorant of, not to know.*

Illē, illā, illūd. *That, he, she, it.* See 186.

Illustrō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To illustrate, illumine.*

Imāgō, Imāgīnīs, *f.* *Image, picture.*

Impātiens, impātiētīs. *Impatient.*

Impērātōr, impērātōrīs, *m.* *Commander.*

Impēriūm, *ii, n.* *Reign, power, government.*

Impētūs, ūs, *m.* *Attack.*

Imprōbitās, imprōbitātīs, *f.* *Wickedness.*

In, *prep. with acc. and abl.* *Into, in, within.*

Incertūs, ā, ūm. *Uncertain.*

Indicō, indicārē, indixī, indictūm. *To declare.*

Infestō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To infest.*

Ingens, ingentīs. *Huge, large, great.*

Innocens, innocentīs. *Innocent.*

Insāniā, *ae, f.* *Insanity.*

Insulā, *ae, f.* *Island.*

Intēr, *prep. with acc.* *Between, among, in the midst of.*

Intrō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To enter.*

Inventōr, inventōrīs, *m.* *Inventor.*

Invitō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To invite.*

Ipsē, ipsā, ipstūm. *Self, he, himself.* See 186.

Is, eā, id. *That, he, she, it.*

Istē, istā, istūd. *That, such.* See 186.

Italiā, *ae, f.* *Italy.*

## J.

Jaciō, jaciārē, jeci, jactūm. *To cast, throw, hurl.*

Jām, *adv.* *Now, already.*

Jucundūs, ā, ūm. *Delightful, pleasant.*

Jūdex, jūdīcīs, *m. and f.* *Judge.*

Jungō, jungārē, junxi, junctūm. *To join.*

Justitiā, *ae, f.* *Justice.*

Justūs, ā, ūm. *Upright, just.*

Jūvenīs, jūvenīs, *m. and f.* *A youth, young man.*

Jūventūs, jūventūtīs, *f.* *Youth, a youth, a young person.*

## L.

Lābōr, lābōrīs, *m.* *Labor.*

Lābōrō, ārē, āvī, ātīm. *To strive for, labor, work.*

Lacēdaemoniūs, *ii, m.* *Spartan, a Spartan, inhabitant of Sparta in Greece.*

Laetitiā, *ae, f.* *Joy.*

Lāpis, lāpīdīs, *m.* *Stone.*

Lātīnē, *adv.* *In Latin.*

Lātinūs, *i, m.* *Latinus, a Latin king.*

Lātūs, ā, ūm. *Broad.*

Laudābīlis, ē. *Praiseworthy, laudable.*

Laudō, ārē, āvi, ātīm. *To praise.*

Laus, laudis, *f. Praise.*

Lāvinia, ae, *f. Lavinia, a proper name.*

Lēgātīō, lēgātīōnis, *f. Embassy.*

Lēgātūs, ī, *m. Ambassador.*

Lēgiō, lēgiōnis, *f. Legion, a body of soldiers.*

Lēgō, lēgērē, lēgi, lectūm. *To choose, appoint.*

Leō, leōnis, *m. Lion.*

Lētālis, ē. *Mortal, deadly.*

Lex, lēgis, *f. Law.*

Libēr, libri, *m. Book.*

Libērō, ārē, āvi, ātīm. *To liberate.*

Libertās, libertātis, *f. Liberty.*

Longūs, ā, ūm. *Long.*

Lūcūs, ī, *m. Grove.*

Lūnā, ae, *f. Moon.*

Lusciniā, ae, *f. Nightingale.*

Lux, lūcis, *f. Light.*

Luxuriā, ae, *f. Luxury.*

Lycurgūs, ī, *m. Lycurgus, a Spartan lawgiver.*

Lysandēr, Lysandri, *m. Lysander, a Spartan general.*

### M.

Mācedōniā, ae, *f. Macedonia, Macedonia, a country of Northern Greece.*

Māgistēr, māgistri, *m. Master, teacher.*

Magnōpērē, *adv. Greatly.*

Magnūs, ā, ūm. *Great, large.*

Mālūm, ī, *n. Evil.*

Marcellūs, ī, *m. Marcellus, a celebrated Roman general.*

Mārē, mārīs, *n. Sea.*

Māter, mātiris, *f. Mother.*

Mātūris, ā, ūm. *Ripe.*

Mēmōriā, ae, *f. Memory.*

Mensā, ae, *f. Table.*

Mensis, mensis, *m. Month.*

Mercēs, mercēdis, *f. Reward.*

Mērēō, mērērē, mērui, mērītūm. *To deserve, merit.*

Metis, ā, ūm. *My. See 185.*

Milēs, militis, *m. Soldier.*

Miltiādēs, is, *m. Miltiades, an Athenian general.*

Mōdestiā, ae, *f. Modesty.*

Mōnēō, mōnērē, mōnui, mōnītūm. *To advise.*

Mons, montis, *m. Mountain.*

Monstrō, ārē, āvi, ātīm. *To show, point out.*

Morā, ae, *f. Delay.*

Mors, mortis, *f. Death.*

Multitūdō, multitūdinis, *f. Multitude.*

Multūs, ā, ūm. *Much, many.*

Mundūs, ī, *m. World, universe.*

Mūnījō, irē, ivi, itūm. *To fortify, defend.*

Mūnūs, mūnēris, *n. Gift, present.*

Mūrūs, ī, *m. Wall.*

Mūtātiō, mūtātiōnis, *f. Change, phase.*

### N.

Nātālīs, ē. *Belonging to one's birth, natal.*

Nātālīs diēs. *Birth-day.*

Nātūrā, ae, *f. Nature.*

Nāvālis, ē. *Naval.*

Nāvīgō, ārē, āvi, ātīm. *To sail to.*

Nāvis, nāvis, *f. Ship.*

Nēcessāriūs, ā, ūm. *Necessary.*

Nēcessitās, nēcessitātis, *f. Necessity.*

Nēpōs, nēpōtis, *m. Grandson.*

Nōbīlis, ē. *Noble.*

Nōmēn, nōmīnis, *n. Name.*

Nōmīnō, ārē, āvi, ātīm. *To call, name.*

*Nōn, adv. Not.*

*Nonnē, interrog. part. Expects the answer, Yes. See 346, II., 2.*

*Nostēr, nostrā, nostrūm. Our, our own, ours.*

*Nōvītās, nōvītātis, f. Novelty.*

*Nōvūs, ā, ūm. New.*

*Nox, noctis, f. Night.*

*Nūbēs, nūbis, f. Cloud.*

*Nūm, interrog. part. Expects the answer, No. See 346, II., 1.*

*Nūmā, ae, m. Numa, a Roman king.*

*Nūmērūs, i, m. Number, quantity.*

*Nummūs, i, m. Money, a piece of money, a coin.*

*Nuntio, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To proclaim, announce.*

*O.*

*Obsēs, obsidis, m. and f. Hostage.*

*Occāsūs, ūs, m. Setting, going down.*

*Occūpō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To occupy, take possession of.*

*Octāvūs, ā, ūm. Eighth.*

*Octō. Eight. See 175, 2.*

*Octogintā. Eighty. See 175, 2.*

*Oculūs, i, m. Eye.*

*Odiōsūs, ā, ūm. Odious, hateful.*

*Omnīs, ē. All, every, whole.*

*Oppidūm, i, n. Town, city.*

*Oppugnō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To besiege, take by storm.*

*Optō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To wish for, desire.*

*Opulentūs, ā, ūm. Rich, opulent.*

*Optis, ōpēris, n. Work.*

*Orātiō, orātiōnis, f. Oration, speech.*

*Oratōr, oratōris, m. Orator.*

*Orbīs, orbis, m. Circle.*

*Orbis terrārūm. The world.*

*Ornō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To adorn, be an ornament to.*

*Ovis, ōvis, f. Sheep.*

*P.*

*Pārens, pārentis, m. and f. Parent.*

*Pārēō, pārērē, pārui, pāritūm. To obey.*

*Pars, partis, f. Part, portion.*

*Parvūs, ā, ūm. Small.*

*Passēr, passēris, m. Sparrow.*

*Pastōr, pastōris, m. Shepherd.*

*Pātēr, pātris, m. Father.*

*Pātriā, ae, f. Native country, country.*

*Paulūs, i, m. Paulus, a Roman consul.*

*Pax, pacis, f. Peace.*

*Pēcūniā, ae, f. Money.*

*Pellis, pellis, f. Skin, hide.*

*Pēr, prep. with acc. Of, through.*

*Pērāgrō, ārē, āvi, ātūm. To wander through.*

*Pēritūs, ā, ūm. Skilled in.*

*Persā, ae, m. A Persian.*

*Pēs, pēdis, m. Foot.*

*Phillippūs, i, m. Philip, king of Macedon.*

*Philōsōphiā, ae, f. Philosophy.*

*Philōsōphūs, i, m. Philosopher.*

*Piētās, piētātis, f. Filial affection, piety, duty.*

*Pirātā, ae, m. Pirate.*

*Piscis, piscis, m. Fish.*

*Pisistrātūs, i, m. Pisistratus, tyrant of Athens.*

*Plācēō, plācērē, plācuī, plācītūm. To please.*

*Plēnūs, ā, ūm. Full.*

*Poenūs, ā, ūm. Carthaginian.*

*Poenus, i, m. A Carthaginian.*

*Pōmūm, i, n. Fruit.*

*Pomplius, ii, m. Pompilius, a Roman name.*

*Pompēiūs, ii, m. Pompey, a celebrated Roman general.*

*Pondūs, pondēris, n. Weight, mass.*

Portūs, ūs, m. *Port, harbor.*  
 Post, prep. with acc. *After.*  
 Pōtens, pōtētis. *Powerful, able.*  
 Praebee, praebēre, praebui, praebī-  
 tūm. *To show, furnish, give.*  
 Praeceptōr, praeceptōris, m. *Teacher,*  
*instructor.*  
 Praeceptūm, i, n. *Rule, precept.*  
 Praeclārus, ū, tūm. *Renowned, dis-*  
*tinguished.*  
 Praedicō, praedicēre, praedixi, prae-  
 dictūm. *To predict, foretell.*  
 Praemiūm, ii, n. *Reward.*  
 Prātūm, i, n. *Meadow.*  
 Prētiōsus, ū, tūm. *Valuable.*  
 Primus, ū, tūm. *First.*  
 Principiūm, ii, n. *Beginning.*  
 Pro, prep. with abl. *In behalf of,*  
*for.*  
 Proeliūm, ii, n. *Battle.*  
 Prospere, adv. *Successfully.*  
 Prōvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To chal-*  
*lenge.*  
 Prudentiā, ae, f. *Prudence.*  
 Publiūs, ii, m. *Publius, a Roman*  
*name.*  
 Puellā, ae, f. *Girl.*  
 Puēr, puēri, m. *Boy.*  
 Pugnā, ae, f. *Battle.*  
 Pugnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To fight.*  
 Pulchēr, pulchrū, pulchrūm. *Beauti-*  
*ful.*  
 Pūnicūs, ū, tūm. *Carthaginian,*  
*Punic.*  
 Pyrrhūs, i, m. *Pyrrhus, a king of*  
*Epirus.*

## Q.

Quām, conj. *Than.*  
 Quartūs, ū, tūm. *Fourth.*  
 Quattuor. *Four.* See 175, 2.  
 Qui, quae, quōd, rel. pronoun. *Who,*  
*which, what.* See 187.

Quinquagintā. *Fifty.* See 175, 2.  
 Quinquē. *Five.* See 175, 2.  
 Quintūs, ū, tūm. *Fifth.*  
 Quis, quae, quid? interrog. pronoun.  
*Who, which, what?* See 188.  
 Quivis, quaevis, quodvis, or quidvis,  
 indef. pronoun. *Whoever, whatever.*  
 See 191.  
 Quotidiānus, ū, tūm. *Daily.*  
 Quotidiē, adv. *Daily.*

## R.

Rāmūs, i, m. *Branch.*  
 Ratiō, ratiōnis, f. *Reason.*  
 Rectē, adv. *Rightly.*  
 Rectūm, i, n. *Right, rectitude.*  
 Rēducō, rēducēre, rēduxi, rēductūm.  
*To lead back.*  
 Rēginā, ae, f. *Queen.*  
 Rēgiō, rēgiōnis, f. *Region, terri-*  
*tory.*  
 Rēgulus, i, m. *Regulus, a Roman*  
*general.*  
 Regnō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To reign.*  
 Regnūm, i, n. *Kingdom, royal author-*  
*ity.*  
 Rēgō, rēgēre, rexī, rectūm. *To*  
*rule.*  
 Rēnovō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To renew.*  
 Rēs, rei, f. *Thing, affair.*  
 Rēs publicā. *Republic.*  
 Rēvōcō, āre, āvi, ātūm. *To recall.*  
 Rex, rēgis, m. *King.*  
 Rhēnūs, i, m. *Rhine.*  
 Rōmā, ae, f. *Rome.*  
 Rōmānus, ū, tūm. *Roman.*  
 Rōmānus, i, m. *Roman, a Roman.*  
 Rōmulus, i, m. *Romulus, the found-*  
*er of Rome.*

## S.

Sāguntūm, i, n. *Saguntum, a town*  
*in Spain.*

*Salūs, salūtis, f. Safety.*  
*Salūtāris, ē. Beneficial, salutary, advantageous.*  
*Salūtē, arē, avi, ātūm. To salute.*  
*Sanctūs, ū, ūm. Holy, sacred.*  
*Sāpiens, sapiētis. Wise.*  
*Sāpientēr, adv. Wisely. —*  
*Sāpientiā, ae, f. Wisdom.*  
*Schōlā, ae, f. School.*  
*Scientiā, ae, f. Knowledge.*  
*Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m. Scipio, a distinguished Roman.*  
*Scribō, scribēre, scripsī, scriptūm. To write.*  
*Scythae, ārtim, m. plur. The Scythians.*  
*Sēcundūs, ū, ūm. Second, favorable.*  
*Sempēr, adv. Always, ever.*  
*Sēnātor, sēnātoris, m. Senator.*  
*Sēnātūs, ūs, m. Senate.*  
*Sēnectūs, sēnectūtis, f. Old age.*  
*Sensūs, ūs, m. Feeling, perception, sense.*  
*Sententiā, ae, f. Opinion.*  
*Sermō, sermōnis, m. Discourse, conversation.*  
*Serviō, irē, ivi, itūm. To serve.*  
*Serviūs, ii, m. Servius, a Roman proper name.*  
*Servō, arē, avi, ātūm. To preserve, keep, save.*  
*Servūs, i, m. Slave.*  
*Sex. Six. See 175, 2.*  
*Siciliā, ae, f. Sicily.*  
*Silentium, ii, n. Silence.*  
*Similis, ē. Like.*  
*Singulāris, ē. Remarkable, singular.*  
*Sōcēr, sōcēri, m. Father-in-law.*  
*Sōciūs, ii, m. Ally, associate.*  
*Sōcrātēs, is, m. Socrates, the celebrated Athenian philosopher.*  
*Sōl, sōlis, m. Sun.*

*Sōlōn, Sōlōnis, m. Solon, an Athenian legislator.*  
*Sōlūm, i, n. Soil.*  
*Spartā, ae, f. Sparta, capital of Laconia.*  
*Spēciēs, spēcīei, f. Appearance.*  
*Spērō, arē, avi, ātūm. To hope.*  
*Spēs, spēi, f. Hope.*  
*Spōliō, arē, avi, ātūm. To rob, spoil, despoil.*  
*Stimulō, arē, avi, ātūm. To stimulate.*  
*Stultitiā, ae, f. Folly.*  
*Sui, sibi. Himself, herself, itself.*  
 See 184.  
*Sūm, esse, fui. To be. See 204.*  
*Sūpērō, arē, avi, ātūm. To conquer.*  
*Supplicium, ii, n. Punishment.*  
*Sutis, ū, ūm. His, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*  
*Syrācūsae, ārtim, f. plur. Syracuse, a city of Sicily.*

T.

*Tācēō, tācērē, tācui, tācītūm. To be silent.*  
*Tārentūm, i, n. Tarentum, an Italian town.*  
*Tarquīniūs, ii, m. Tarquin, a Roman king.*  
*Tēlūm, i, n. Javelin, weapon.*  
*Tēmēritās, tēmēritātis, f. Rashness.*  
*Templūm, i, n. Temple.*  
*Tempūs, tempōris, n. Time.*  
*Terrā, ae, f. Land, earth.*  
*Terreō, terrērē, terrui, terrītūm. To frighten, terrify.*  
*Tertiūs, ū, ūm. Third.*  
*Thālēs, is, m. Thales, a Grecian philosopher.*  
*Thēbānis, ū, ūm. Theban, belonging to Thebes (a city in Greece).*

Thēbānūs, i, m. *A Theban.*  
 Thēmistōclēs, is, m. *Themistocles, a celebrated Athenian.*  
 Thrāsýbūlūs, i, m. *Thrasybulus, the liberator of Athens.*  
 Ticinūs, i, m. *Ticinus, a river of Cisalpine Gaul.*  
 Trēs, triā. *Three.* See 176.  
 Trigintā. *Thirty.* See 175, 2.  
 Triumphō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To triumph.*  
 Trōjā, ae, f. *Troy, ancient city in Asia Minor.*  
 Tū, tui. *Thou, you.* See 184.  
 Tullīā, ae, f. *Tullia, a Roman proper name.*  
 Tullūs, i, m. *Tullus, a Roman king.*  
 Tūm, adv. *Then, at that time.*  
 Turrīs, turrīs, f. *Tower.*  
 Tuis, ā, ūm. *Your, yours, thy, thine.*  
 Týrannūs, i, m. *Tyrant.*  
 Týriūs, ā, ūm. *Tyrian.*

## U.

Ulyssēs, is, m. *Ulysses, a Grecian king.*  
 Unīversūs, ā, ūm. *All, the whole, entire.*  
 Unūs, ā, ūm. *One.* See 176.  
 Urbs, urbīs, f. *City.*  
 Usūs, ūs, m. *Use.*  
 Utīlīs, ē. *Useful.*

## V.

Vālētūdō, vālētūdīnīs, f. *Health.*  
 Vāriētās, vāriētātīs, f. *Variety.*  
 Vāriūs, ā, ūm. *Various.*  
 Varrō, varrōnīs, m. *Varro, a Roman consul.*  
 Vēr, vēris, n. *Spring.*  
 Verbūm, i, n. *Word.*

Vērēcundiā, ae, f. *Modesty.*  
 Vērītās, vērītātīs, f. *Truth, verity.*  
 Vērūs, ā, ūm. *True, real.*  
 Vērūm, i, n. *Truth.*  
 Vestēr, vestrā, vestrūm. *Your.*  
 Vestiō, irē, ivī, itūm. *To clothe.*  
 Viā, ae, f. *Way, road.*  
 Victōr, victōrīs, m. *Victor, conqueror.*  
 Victōriā, ae, f. *Victory.*  
 Victōriā, ae, f. *Victoria, Queen of England.*  
 Vigīlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To watch, be awake.*  
 Vīlīs, ē. *Cheap.*  
 Vindex, vindicīs, m. and f. *Vindicator, avenger.*  
 Viōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To violate.*  
 Vir, vīrī, m. *Man, hero, soldier.*  
 Virgō, virgīnīs, f. *Maiden, girl.*  
 Virtūs, virtūtīs, f. *Valor, virtue.*  
 Vitā, ae, f. *Life.*  
 Vitūm, ii, n. *Fault, vice.*  
 Vitūpērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To find fault with, censure, blame.*  
 Vivō, vivērē, vixī, victūm. *To live, reside.*  
 Vōcō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To call.*  
 Vōlō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To fly.*  
 Vōluntāriūs, ā, ūm. *Voluntary.*  
 Vōluptās, vōluptātīs, f. *Pleasure.*  
 Vox, vōcīs, f. *Voice.*  
 Vulnērō, ārē, āvī, ātūm. *To wound.*  
 Vulnūs, vulnērīs, n. *Wound.*  
 Vultūr, vultūrīs, m. *Vulture.*  
 Vultūs, ūs, m. *Countenance.*

## X.

Xerxēs, is, m. *Xerxes, a Persian king.*

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

---

### A.

A, an. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article. See p. 12, note 1.*

Acceptable. *Grātūs, ā, ūm.*

Admonish. *Admōneō, admōnērē, admōnuī, admōnitūm.*

Adorned. *Ornātūs, ā, ūm.*

Advise. *Mōneō, mōnērē, mōnuī, mōnitūm.*

After. *Post, prep. with acc.*

Against. *Contrā, prep. with acc.*  
Sometimes denoted by the Dative.

Alexander. *Alexandēr, Alexandrī, m.*

All. *Omnīs, ē.*

Always. *Sempēr, adv.*

Announce. *Nuntiō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

Appoint. *Creō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

Army. *Exercītūs, ūs, m.*

Arrival. *Adventūs, ūs, m.*

At. *Denoted by the Ablative of Place, or of Time. See 421 and 426.*

Athenian. *Athēniensis, ē.*

Athenian, an Athenian. *Athēniensis, is, m. and f.*

Athens. *Athēnæ, ārum, f. plur.*

Attack. *Impētūs, ūs, m.*

Await. *Expectō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

### B.

Battle. *Proeliūm, ū, n.*

Battle-array. *Acies, ei, f.*

Be. *Sūm, esse, fui.*

Be silent. *Taceō, tacērē, tacuī, tactūm.*

Beautiful. *Pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm.*

Before. *Antē, prep. with acc.*

Bird. *Avīs, ūvis, f.*

Birth-day. *Nātālis diēs, m.*

Blame. *Vitupērō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

Book. *Libēr, librī, m.*

Boy. *Puēr, puērī, m.*

Brave. *Fortis, ē.*

Bravely. *Fortitēr, adv.*

Bravery. *Virtūs, virtūtis, f.*

Bring to a close. *Finiō, irē, iui, itūm.*

Brother. *Frāter, frātis, m.*

Brutus. *Brūtus, ī, m.*

By. *A, ab, prep. with abl. Often denoted by the Ablative alone. See 414.*

### C.

Caius. *Caiūs, ū, m.*

Call. *Vocō, āre, āvi, ātūm.*

Camillus. *Cāmillūs, ī, m.*

Can, can have. *See may, may have.*

Carthage. *Carthāgō, Carthāgēnis, f.*

Carthaginian. *Carthāgēniensis, ē.*

Carthaginian, a Carthaginian. *Carthāgēniensis, is, m. and f.*

Cato. *Cūtō, Cūtōnis, m.*

Cicero. *Cicērō, Cicērōnis, m.*



Citizen. *Civis*, *civis*, m. and f.  
 City. *Urbs*, *urbis*, f.  
 Cloud. *Nubēs*, *nubis*, f.  
 Commander. *Imperātor*, *imperātoris*, m.  
 Concerning. *Dē*, prep. with abl.  
 Consul. *Consul*, *consulis*, m.  
 Contrary to. *Contrā*, prep. with acc.  
 Conversation. *Sermō*, *sermōnis*, m.  
 Corinth. *Corinthūs*, i, f.  
 Corinthian. *Corinthiūs*, ā, ūm.  
 Corinthian, a Corinthian. *Corinthiūs*, ī, m.  
 Cornelius. *Corneliūs*, ū, m.  
 Could, could have. See *might*, *might have*.  
 Country. *Patriā*, ae, f.  
 Courage. *Virtūs*, *virtutis*, f.  
 Crown. *Cōrōnā*, ae, f.

## D.

Daily. *Quotidianūs*, ā, ūm.  
 Daughter. *Filiā*, ae, f.  
 Day. *Diēs*, *diēi*, m. See 119, note.  
 Dear. *Cārūs*, ā, ūm.  
 Declare. *Indicō*, *indicere*, *indixi*, *indictum*.  
 Delight. *Dēlectō*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Desirous of. *Cupidiūs*, ā, ūm; āvidūs, ā, ūm.  
 Did. Often the sign of the Imperfect, or of the Perfect tense, especially in questions.  
 Diligence. *Diligentiā*, ae, f.  
 Diligent. *Diligens*, *diligentis*.  
 Do. Often the sign of the Present tense, especially in questions.

## E.

Eight. *Octō*. See 175, 2.  
 Eighth. *Octāvūs*, ā, ūm.  
 Enemy. *Hostis*, *hostis*, m. and f.

Exercise. *Exercō*, *exercere*, *exercui*, *exercitum*.

Exile. *Exsul*, *exsulis*, m. and f.  
 Expect. *Expectō*, āre, āvi, ātum.

## F.

Father. *Pater*, *pateris*, m.  
 Father-in-law. *Socr*, *soceri*, m.  
 Fertile. *Fertilis*, ē.  
 Fidelity. *Fides*, *fidei*, f.  
 Field. *Agēr*, *agri*, m.  
 Fifth. *Quintūs*, ū, ūm.  
 Fifty. *Quinquagintā*. See 175, 2.  
 Fight. *Pugnō*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Finish. *Finis*, ire, ivi, itum.  
 Five. *Quinquē*. See 175, 2.  
 Flea. *Fugis*, *fugere*, *fugī*, *fugitum*.  
 Flower. *Flōs*, *floris*, m.  
 Fly. *Volo*, āre, āvi, ātum.  
 Foot. *Pēs*, *pedis*, m.  
 Fond of. *Amans*, *amantis*.  
 For. *Pro*, prep. with abl. In the sense of *because of*, it is denoted by the Ablative alone (414); and in the sense of *for the benefit of*, by the Dative (384).  
 Fortify. *Munis*, ire, ivi, itum.  
 Four. *Quattuor*. See 175, 2.  
 Fourth. *Quartūs*, ā, ūm.  
 Friend. *Amicus*, i, m.  
 Friendship. *Amicitia*, ae, f.  
 From. *A*, *ab*, prep. with abl.  
 Fruit. *Fructus*, ūs, m.

## G.

Garden. *Hortus*, i, m.  
 Gaul. *Gallūs*, i, m.  
 Gem. *Gemma*, ae, f.  
 General. *Dux*, *ducis*, m. and f.  
 Gift. *Dōnum*, i, n.  
 Glory. *Glōriā*, ae, f.  
 Gold. *Aurum*, i, n.  
 Golden. *Aureus*, ā, ūm.

Good. *Bonūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Goodness. *Bonitas, bonitatis, f.*  
 Govern. *Rēgō, rēgērē, rexī, rectum.*  
 Great. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Greece. *Graecia, ae, f.*  
 Grove. *Lūcis, ī, m.*  
 Guard. *Custodiō, irē, ivi, itum.*

*H.*

Had. *Often the sign of the Pluperfect tense.*  
 Hannibal. *Hannibāl, Hannibālis, m.*  
 Happy. *Beātūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Have. *Habēō, habērē, habui, habuim.*  
 Sometimes simply the sign of the Perfect tense; as, we have loved.  
 He, she, it. *Is, ea, id; illē, illā, illud.* The pronoun is often implied in the ending of the verb.  
 He himself. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum.*  
 Hear. *Audiō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 High. *Altūs, altū, altum.*  
 Himself. *Sui (184); ipsē, ipsā, ipsum.*  
 His. *Suūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Hope (verb). *Spērō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Hope (noun). *Spēs, spēi, f.*  
 Hour. *Horā, ae, f.*  
 Hundred. *Centum.* See 175, 2.

*I.*

I. *Egō, mei.* See 184.  
 In. *In, prep. with abl.*  
 In behalf of. *Prō, prep. with abl.*  
 Instruct. *Eriudiō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Instructor. *Praeceptōr, praeceptoris, m.*  
 Into. *In, prep. with acc.*  
 Invite. *Invitō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Iron. *Ferrum, ī, n.*  
 Island. *Insulā, ae, f.*  
 It. See *he, she, it.*  
 Italy. *Italīa, ae, f.*

*J.*

Judge. *Judex, judicis, m. and f.*  
 Justice. *Iustitia, ae, f.*

*K.*

Keep one's word. *Fidēi servārē.*  
 See p. 74, note 4.  
 Kindly. *Bēnignē, adv.*  
 King. *Rex, regis, m.*  
 Knowledge. *Scientia, ae, f.*

*L.*

Large. *Magnūs, ā, ūm.*  
 Latinus. *Lātinūs, ī, m.*  
 Lavinia. *Lāvinia, ae, f.*  
 Law. *Lex, legis, f.*  
 Lead. *Ducō, ducērē, duxi, ductum.*  
 Lead back. *Rēducō, rēducērē, rēduxi, rēductum.*  
 Lead forth. *Educō, educērē, eduxi, eductum.*  
 Let. *Render by the Subjunctive.* See 196, I., 2.  
 Leader. *Dux, ducis, m. and f.*  
 Letter. *Epistolā, ae, f.*  
 Liberate. *Libērō, arē, avi, atum.*  
 Life. *Vitā, ae, f.*  
 Like. *Similis, ē.*  
 Love. *Amō, arē, avi, atum.*

*M.*

Macedonia. *Macedōniā, ae, f.*  
 Man. *Hōmō, hōmīnis, m. Vir, viri, m.* The latter is used as a term of respect; a true or worthy man, a hero.  
 Many. *Multi, ae, ā, plur.*  
 May, can. *Signs of the Present Subjunctive.*  
 May have, can have. *Signs of the Perfect Subjunctive.*  
 Me. See *I.*  
 Memory. *Mēmōriā, ae, f.*

Might, could, would, should. *Signs of the Imperfect Subjunctive.*

Might have, could have, would have, should have. *Signs of the Pluperfect Subjunctive.*

Mind. *Animus, i, m.*

Moat. *Fossā, ae, f.*

Money. *Pecuniā, ae, f.*

Month. *Mensis, mensis, m.*

More. *Sign of the Comparative degree.* See 160.

Most. *Sign of the Superlative degree.* See 160.

Mound. *Agger, aggeris, m.*

Mountain. *Mons, montis, m.*

Much. *Multum, adv.*

My. *Meus, ā, ūm.* See 185.

### N.

Name. *Nomen, nōmēnis, n.*

Nightingale. *Luscinia, ae, f.*

Noble. *Nobilis, ē.*

Not. *Nōn, adv. Interrogative, nonnē.*

### O.

Obey. *Pareō, pārēre, parui, paritum.*

Observe. *Servō, arē, avi, atum.*

Occupy. *Occupō, arē, avi, atum.*

Of. *Denoted by the Genitive.* See 393.

Of itself. *Për sē.*

On. *Often denoted by the Ablative of Time.* See 426.

One. *Unus, ā, ūm.* See 176.

Oration. *Oratiō, oratiōnis, f.*

Orator. *Orator, oratoris, m.*

Our. *Noster, trā, trum.*

### P.

Parent. *Parens, parentis, m. and f.*

Philip. *Philippus, i, m.*

Pisistratus. *Pisistratus, i, m.*

Please. *Placeō, placere, placui, placitum.*

Pleasing. *Gratus, ā, ūm.*

Pleasure. *Voluptas, voluptatis, f.*

Plough. *Arō, arare, aravi, aratum.*

Plunder (verb). *Spolio, are, avi, atum.*

Practise. *Exerceō, exercere, exercui, exercitum.*

Praise (verb). *Laudō, are, avi, atum.*

Praise (noun). *Laus, laudis, f.*

Precept. *Praeceptum, i, n.*

Predict. *Praedico, praedicere, praedixi, praedictum.*

Present (noun). *Donum, i, n.*

Publius. *Publius, ii, m.*

Punish. *Punio, ire, vi, itum.*

Pupil. *Discipulus, i, m.*

Put to flight. *Fugio, are, avi, atum.*

### Q.

Queen. *Regina, ae, f.*

### R.

Receive. *Accipio, accipere, accēpi, acceptum.*

Reign, royal authority. *Regnum, i, n.*

Renowned. *Clarus, ā, ūm.*

Reside. *Habito, are, avi, atum.*

Rhine. *Rhenus, i, m.*

River. *Amnis, amnis, m.*

Roman. *Romanus, ā, ūm.*

Roman, a Roman. *Romanus, i, m.*

Rome. *Roma, ae, f.*

Romulus. *Romulus, i, m.*

Rule. *Regō, regere, rexi, rectum.*

### S.

Safety. *Salus, salutis, f.*

Same. *Idem, eadem, idem.* See 186.

Say. *Dico, dicere, dixi, dictum.*

Save. *Servō; arē, avi, autum.*  
 Scipio. *Scipiō, Scipiōnis, m.*  
 Senator. *Sēnātor, sēnātoris, m.*  
 Serve. *Serviō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Servius. *Serviūs, ū, m.*  
 Setting. *Occāsus, ūs, m.*  
 Shall, will. *Signs of the Future tense.*  
 Shall have, will have. *Signs of the Future Perfect tense.*  
 Shepherd. *Pastōr, pastōris, m.*  
 Should, should have. See *might, might have.*  
 Show. *Monstrō, arē, avi, autum.*  
 Sicily. *Siciliā, ae, f.*  
 Silent. See *be silent.*  
 Silver. *Argentum, i, n.*  
 Sing. *Cantō, arē, avi, autum.*  
 Singing, a song. *Cantus, ūs, m.*  
 Six. *Sex.* See 175, 2.  
 Slave. *Servus, i, m.*  
 Sleep. *Dormiō, irē, ivi, itum.*  
 Soldier. *Miles, militis, m.*  
 Somebody, some one. *Aliquis, aliquod, aliquid, or aliquod.* See 191.  
 Son. *Filius, ū, m.*  
 Son-in-law. *Gēnēr, gēnērī, m.*  
 Song. *Carmen, carminis, n.*  
 Speak. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*  
 State. *Civitas, civitatis, f.*  
 Strengthen. *Firmō, arē, avi, autum.*  
 Sun. *Sol, solis, m.*  
 Sunset. *Occāsus solis.*  
 Sword. *Gladius, ū, m.*

T.

Take. *Capiō, capere, cepi, captum.*  
 Take by storm. *Expugnō, arē, avi, autum.*  
 Tarquin. *Tarquinius, ū, m.*  
 Tell. *Dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum.*  
 Temple. *Templum, i, n.*

Ten. *Dēcēm.* See 175, 2.  
 Terrify. *Terrē, terrere, terrui, territum.*  
 Than. *Quā.* Often omitted, in which case the Ablative follows. See 417.  
 That. *Illud, illud, illud.* See 186.  
 The. *Not to be translated, as the Latin has no article.* See p. 12, note 1.  
 Their. *Suis, ū, ūm.*  
 Then. *Tūm, adv.*  
 Thing. *Rēs, rei, f.*  
 This. *Hic, haec, hoc.* See 186.  
 Three. *Trēs, triū.* See 176.  
 Time. *Tempus, temporis, n.*  
 To. *Ad, in,* preps. with acc. *To* is sometimes denoted by the Accusative, and sometimes by the Dative. See 379 and 384.  
 True. *Verus, ū, ūm.*  
 Truth. *Verum, i, n.*  
 Tullia. *Tullia, ae, f.*  
 Two. *Duō, duae, duō.* See 176.  
 Tyrant. *Tyrannus, i, m.*

U.

Use. *Usus; ūs, m.*  
 Useful. *Utilis, e.*

V.

Valor. *Virtus, virtutis, f.*  
 Valuable. *Præstiosus, ū, ūm.*  
 Very. *Sometimes the sign of the Superlative.* See 160.  
 Victoria. *Victoria, ae, f.*  
 Victory. *Victoria, ae, f.*  
 Violate. *Viō, arē, avi, autum.*  
 Virtue. *Virtus, virtutis, f.*

W.

Walk. *Ambulō, arē, avi, autum.*  
 War. *Bellum, i, n.*

Way. *Via*, ae, f.

Well. *Bene*, adv.

Who, which (relative). *Qui*, *quae*, *quod*. See 187.

Who, which, what (interrogative)?  
*Quis*, *quae*, *quid*? *qui*, *quae*, *quod*?  
See 188.

Wide. *Latus*, *a*, *um*.

Wife. *Conjux*, *conjugis*, f.

Will, will have. See *shall*, *shall*  
*have*.

Winter. *Hiems*, *hiemis*, f.

Wisdom. *Sapientia*, ae, f.

Wise. *Sapiens*, *sapientis*.

With. *Cum*, prep. with abl. Often  
denoted by the Ablative alone.  
See 414.

Word. *Verbum*, i, n. To keep one's  
word, *fidem servare*. See p. 74,  
note 4.

Would, would have. See *might*,  
*might have*.

Wound. *Vulnere*, *are*, *avi*, *atum*.

Write. *Scribo*, *scribere*, *scripsi*, *scrip-*  
*tum*.

## Y.

Year. *Annus*, i, m.

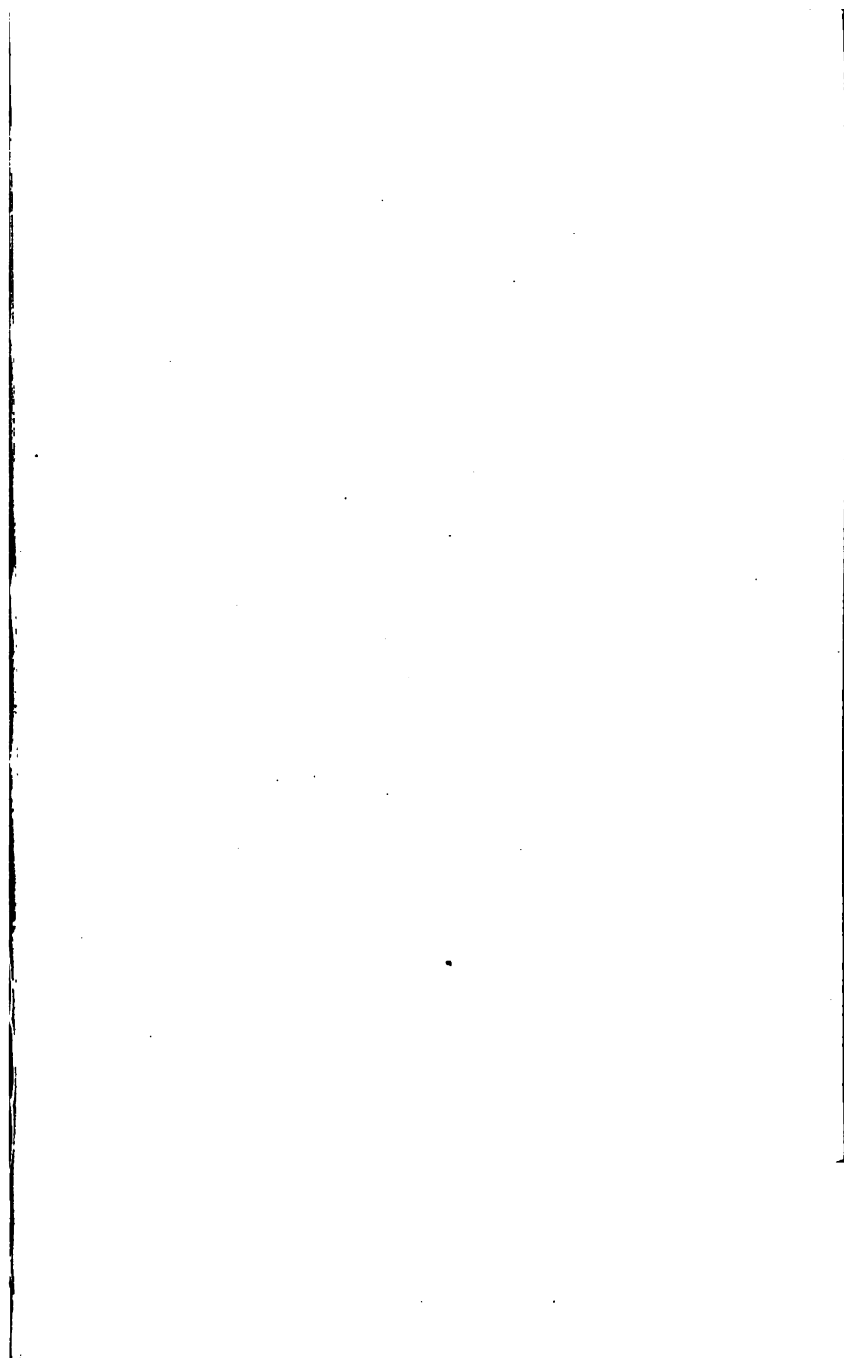
You. *Tu*, *tui*. See 184.

Your. *Tuus*, *a*, *um*; *vester*, *vestra*,  
*vestrum*.

Yourself. *Tu*, *tui ipse*.









**This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building**

**This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building**

[illegible]

7th B1 10/17

